

CONNECT

2025

4th

PRIM.
SECOND TERM





Table of contents

Theme 3 My society

مجتمعي

Unit 7 This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذي أعيش فيه

Lesson 1: Main vocabulary	8
Practice on Lesson 1	13
Lesson 2: Language Focus	17
Practice on Lesson 2	20
Lesson 3: Story	22
Practice on Lesson 3	27
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project	29
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	33

Unit 7 Review	35
Check Your Vocabulary	36
Writing Time	37
Student's Book Corner	38
Test Yourself on Unit 7	39
Al-Azhar Corner	41

Unit 8 We had fun

قضيّا وقتًا ممتعًا

Lesson 1: Main vocabulary	43
Practice on Lesson 1	47
Lesson 2: Language Focus	51
Practice on Lesson 2	53
Lesson 3: CLIL: Social Studies	55
Practice on Lesson 3	59
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project	61
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	64

Unit 8 Review	66
Check Your Vocabulary	67
Writing Time	68
Student's Book Corner	69
Test Yourself on Unit 8	70
Al-Azhar Corner	72

Unit 9 What makes us special?

ما الذي يجعلنا مميزين؟

Lesson 1: Main vocabulary	74
Practice on Lesson 1	78
Lesson 2: Language Focus	84
Practice on Lesson 2	85
Lesson 3: Citizenship	87
Practice on Lesson 3	91
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project	93
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	96

Unit 9 Review	98
Check Your Vocabulary	99
Writing Time	100
Student's Book Corner	101
Test Yourself on Unit 9	102
Al-Azhar Corner	104
March Revision	105



Theme 4 I'm a responsible person أنا شخص مسؤول

Unit 10 I enjoy my life

أنا أستمتع بحياتي

Lesson 1: Main vocabulary	110
Practice on Lesson 1	114
Lesson 2: Language Focus	122
Practice on Lesson 2	123
Lesson 3: Story	125
Practice on Lesson 3	127
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing & Project	129
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	132

Unit 10 Review	134
Check Your Vocabulary	135
Writing Time	136
Student's Book Corner	137
Test Yourself on Unit 10	138
Al-Azhar Corner	140

Unit 11 What can we do?

ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟

Lesson 1: Main vocabulary	142
Practice on Lesson 1	147
Lesson 2: Language Focus	152
Practice on Lesson 2	153
Lesson 3: Story	155
Practice on Lesson 3	160
Lesson 4: Air Pollution	162
Practice on Lesson 4	166
Lessons 5 & 6: Writing & Project	168
Practice on Lessons 5 & 6	172

Unit 11 Review	174
Check Your Vocabulary	175
Writing Time	176
Student's Book Corner	177
Test Yourself on Unit 11	178
Al-Azhar Corner	180
April Revision	181

Unit 12 Dalia Saves the Village داليا تنقذ القرية

Vocabulary	186
Story Elements	188
Story	190
Story Summary	198
General Practice on Story	199

Final Revision & Exams

Revision on Units 7 & 8	202
Revision on Units 9 & 10	209
Revision on Units 11 & 12	216
Conjugation of Verbs	221
Final Exams	223
Al-Azhar Exams	245
امتحانات دمج	249
Tapescripts	251
Writing Answers	254



Theme 3

My society مجتمعي

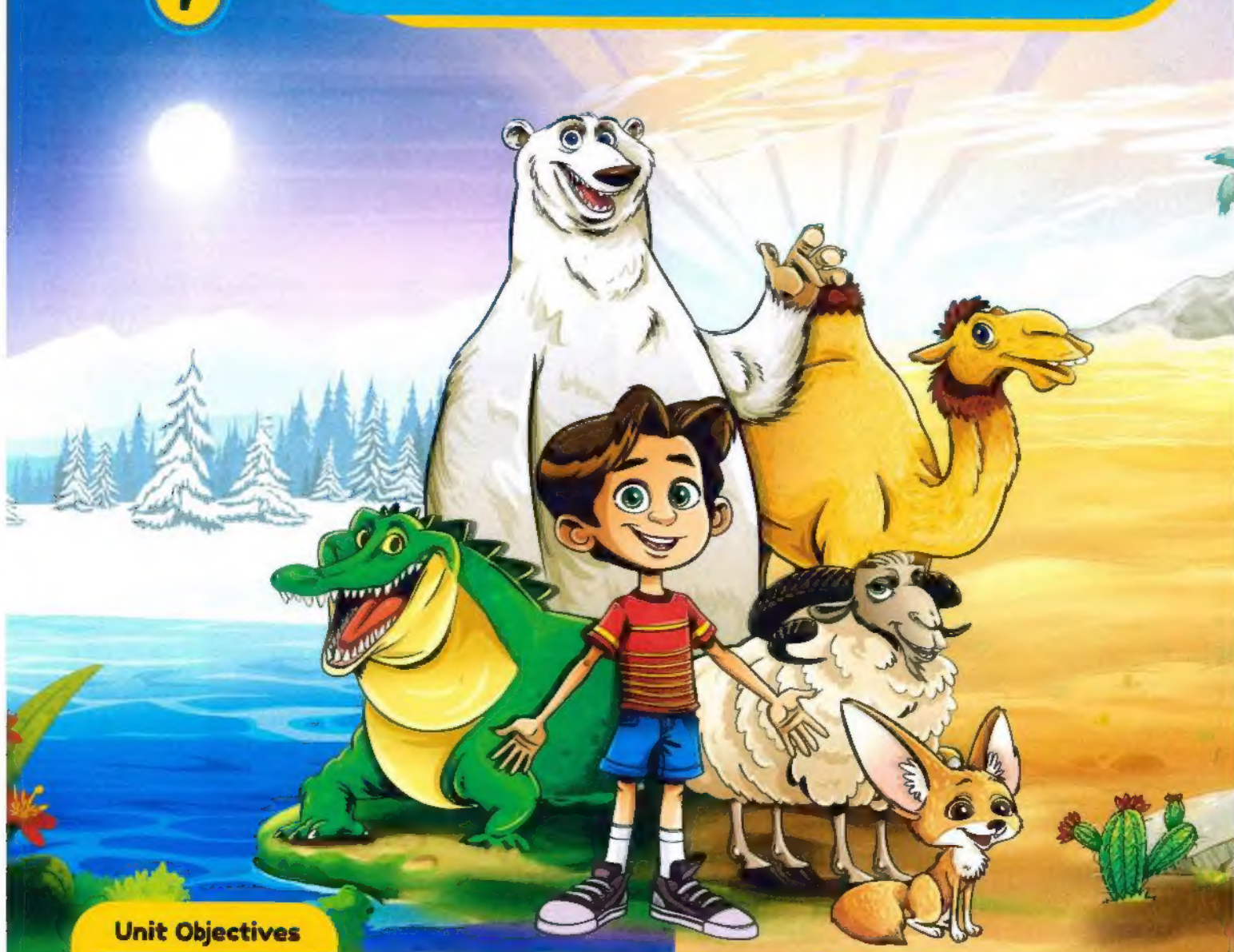


Unit

7

This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذي أعيش فيه



Unit Objectives

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- read about the Nile and why it is so important.
- talk about his/her neighborhood in the past and now.
- use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
- practice the long vowel sounds.
- practice simplifying fractions.
- write about a memory.

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- يقرأ عن نهر النيل ولماذا هو مهم للغاية.
- يتحدث عن حيه في الماضي والآن.
- يستخدم صيغ الفعل الماضي البسيط المنتظم وغير المنتظم.
- يتدرب على أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة.
- يتدرب على تبسيط الكسور.
- يكتب عن ذكرى.

Did you know?

- The World * Capital of Cats in Romania has a cat * population that is four times larger than the human population.

* capital

عاصمة

* population

تعداد سكاني

Find out!

- In addition to Egypt, the Nile travels through 11 other African countries: Burundi, Tanzania, Rwanda, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, Kenya, Uganda, Eritrea, Sudan, Ethiopia, and South Sudan.



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



city
مدينة



building
مبنى



river
نهر



forest
غابة



desert
صحراء



village
قرية



oasis
واحة



mountain
جبل

Extra vocabulary

quiz	اختبار	the Nile	نهر النيل	interesting (adj.)	شيق / مثير للاهتمام
life	حياة	sentence	جملة	true (adj.)	صحيح
the shortest (adj.)	الأقصر	the longest (adj.)	الأطول	the widest (adj.)	الأوسع
the world	العالم	both	كلاهما / كل من	Amazon	نهر الأمازون
kilometer	كيلومتر (وحدة قياس)	center	مركز	earth	الأرض
moon	قمر	Australia	أستراليا	maybe	ربما
sure (adj.)	متأكد	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	guess	تخمين
clearly	بوضوح	branch	فرع	home	موطن (البيئة)
planet	كوكب	reptiles	زواحف	crocodile	تمساح



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما في (city).

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) في (desert) ينطق /z/ (ز).

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) في (village) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sound يبدو	sounded	try يحاول	tried
travel يسافر	traveled	guess يخمن (يعتقد)	guessed
decide يقرر	decided	check يفحص / يراجع	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
do يقوم / يفعل	did	know يعرف	knew
bring يُحضِر	brought	choose يختار	chose
think يعتقد / يفكر	thought	say يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

Let's (inf.) ... هيا بنا ...	of course طبعا / بالتأكيد	the whole of Egypt جميع أنحاء مصر
come on هيا	bring life يجلب الحياة	Is it like ...? هل هذا مثل ...؟
that sounds like هذا يبدو مثل	last one الأخير	home for موطن لـ ...

Important sentences جمل هامة

- * The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. يجلب النيل الحياة لمصر كلها.
- * The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. طول نهر النيل هو ٦,٦٧٠ كيلومتر.
- * That's like traveling to the center of the earth. هذا مثل السفر إلى مركز الأرض.
- * The Nile has two branches in Egypt. نهر النيل له فرعان في مصر.

Take care!

تتغير بعض الكلمات تمامًا في صيغة الجمع ولا تتبع القواعد.

e.g. oasis واحة → oases واحات



أسماء البلدان والأنهار والأماكن المحددة هي أسماء علم، لذا يجب أن تبدأ الكلمة بأحرف كبيرة.

- e.g.
- Egypt - Australia
 - Nile - Amazon
 - Cairo Tower

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The (city – forest – oasis – earth) is in the desert.
- 2 Many different kinds of fish live in the (forest – river – oasis – building).
- 3 I'm studying because I have a/an (branch – tower – Amazon – quiz) tomorrow.
- 4 He didn't know the answer, but he (ate – thought – sounded – guessed) it.
- 5 (Deserts – Mountains – Forests – Oases) are usually very high.
- 6 There are a lot of trees and plants in the (forest – desert – sea – river).



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Sara

Let's do this quiz.

هيا بنا نقوم بهذا الاختبار.



Dina

What is it about?

عن ماذا يدور الاختبار؟



Sara

The Nile.

نهر النيل.

Dina

That sounds very interesting.

يبدو هذا مثيرًا للاهتمام.



Sara

Of course, the Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try. Question 1, which sentence is true? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest, or the widest river in the world?

بالطبع، يجلب النيل الحياة لجميع أنحاء مصر. إذا لم يكن هناك نهر النيل، فلا وجود لمصر. هيا بنا نحاول.
السؤال الأول، أي جملة هي الصحيحة؟ هل نهر النيل هو أقصر، أم أطول، أم أوسع نهر في العالم؟

Dina

Hmm. I don't know. I guess it's the longest, what do you think?

حسنًا. لا أعلم. أعتقد أنه الأطول، ماذا تعتقدين؟



Sara

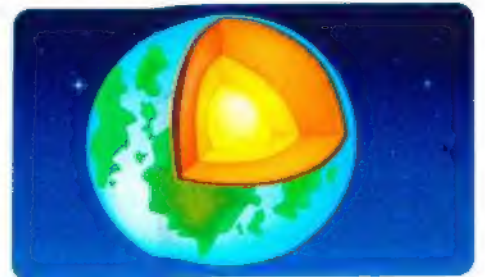
Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose 'b'. Next question: 'The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long, is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon, or traveling to Australia?'

نعم، أعلم أن كلا من نهري الأمازون والنيل طويلان جدًا جدًا. دعينا نختار «ب». السؤال التالي: يبلغ طول النيل ٦٦٧٠ كيلومترًا، هل هو مثل السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا؟

Dina

Maybe traveling to the center of the earth?

ربما السفر إلى مركز الأرض؟





Sara

Hmm, I'm not sure, that sounds like a good guess. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

حسنًا ، لست متأكدة ، هذا يبدو وكأنه تخمين صحيح. رقم ٣ ، نحتاج إلى إلقاء نظرة على الصور وأن نقرر أي نهر هو النيل.

Dina



I think it's 'c'.

أعتقد أنه «ج».



Sara

Why?

لماذا؟

Dina



In 'c' you can see the Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt!

في «ج» يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة ، لذلك من الواضح أنه في مصر!



Sara

OK, last one. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

حسنًا ، الأخير. كم عدد فروع النيل في مصر؟

Dina



I'm going to say three, that sounds like a good number. Erm, check on your phone.

سأقول ثلاثة ، يبدو هذا عددًا صحيحًا. ممم ، تحقق من هاتفك.



Sara

OK. Aha! There are 2 branches!

حسنًا. آها! يوجد فرعان!

Language Notes

1 Superlative short adjectives:

صيغة التفضيل للصفات القصيرة:

the + adjective + est

e.g. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

2

How long ...?

للسؤال عن الطول نستخدم:

كم الطول ...؟

e.g. A: How long is the Nile?

B: It is 6,670 kilometers long.

3

How many + اسم جمع ...?

للسؤال عن العدد نستخدم:

كم العدد ...؟

e.g. A: How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

B: There are 2 branches.

4

Let's + inf. الفعل في المصدر

لاقتراح فعل شيء ما نستخدم:

هيا بنا ...

Let's do this quiz.



Find out!

The word 'Nile' actually comes from the Greek word 'Neilos', which was the name given to the river by the ancient Greeks.

كلمة «النيل» في الواقع تأتي من الكلمة اليونانية «نيلوس»، وهو الاسم الذي أطلقه الإغريق القدماء على النهر.

Did you know?

The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it. It is the second largest reptile in the world. It is between 3.5 - 6 m long.

النيل موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف. يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف على كوكب الأرض، وهو تمساح النيل. إنه ثاني أكبر الزواحف في العالم. يتراوح طوله بين ٣.٥ إلى ٦ أمتار.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 The Nile is for different kinds of fish and birds.
a) village b) building c) home d) tower
- 2 The Nile is one of the planet's largest reptiles.
a) fish b) horse c) dog d) crocodile
- 3 It is the largest reptile in the world.
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
- 4 It is between 3.5 - 6 m
a) long b) tall c) high d) short

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 There are a lot of trees in the
a) forest b) desert c) river d) lake
بى سريف 2024
- 2 Salma lives in a tall in the city.
a) mountain b) building c) tree d) forest
القاهرة إدارة الشراية 2024
- 3 Ali could climb the high last week.
a) moon b) earth c) mountain d) oasis
أسيوط - إدارة متفوط 2024
- 4 We get water from the
a) shop b) school c) river d) desert
الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2024
- 5 The River Nile has two in Egypt.
a) forests b) branches c) seas d) arms
الإسكندرية إدارة غرب 2024
- 6 The River Nile is the river in the world.
a) tallest b) longest c) happiest d) thinnest
القليوبية إدارة بنها 2024
- 7 The Nile is about 6,670 long.
a) kilometers b) kilograms c) tons d) centimeters
القليوبية إدارة بنها 2024
- 8 The Nile crocodile is one of the largest
a) insects b) reptiles c) plants d) forest
دمياط إدارة البرغا 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

branches – longest – crocodile – kinds – earth

القليوبية إدارة طرخ 2024

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two (1) The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the (2) The Nile is home for different (3) of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile (4), lives in it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024

In Egypt, there is a river called the Nile. The Nile is 6670 Km long. It's very long. It has many kinds of fish. It flows quietly, giving life to the land. Birds fly near it. There are trees on its two sides. Farmers plant seeds in its rich soil. The Nile flows leaving suitable mud for crops. The Nile is a friend to all. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The opposite of the underlined word "long" is
a) wide b) tall c) high d) short
- Farmers plant seeds in the rich of the Nile.
a) water b) branch c) bank d) soil

Answer the following questions:

- How long is the Nile?
.....

- What does the Nile do to Egypt?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- egypt is my beautiful home
.....

الشرقية 2024

- Can you see the Cairo tower
.....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"The Nile"

longest – home for – branches

بي سويب إدارة إمتاسيا 2024

محتاج عنده
صفحة
258



A short story about Grandpa قصة قصيرة عن الجد



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

memories	ذكريات	village	قرية	visitors	زوار
trucks	شاحنات	metal (adj.)	معدني	curious (adj.)	فضولي

Extra vocabulary

box	صندوق	street	شارع	excited (adj.)	متحمس
Colossi of Memnon	تمثالاً ممنون	quiet (adj.)	هادئ	then	ذلك الحين
road	طريق	grass	عشب	space	مكان
ground	أرض	smile	ابتسامة	inside	داخل
subjects	مواد دراسية	easy (adj.)	سهل	games	ألعاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
live يعيش	lived	cross يعبر	crossed
wonder يتعجب / يتساءل	wondered	start يبدأ	started
pull يسحب	pulled	bury يدفن	buried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
grow up يكبر	grew up	dig يحفر	dug
say يقول	said	sit يجلس	sat
feel يشعر	felt	find يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

lots of	كثير من	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
pull out	يسحب للخارج	a big smile on his face	ابتسامة كبيرة على وجهه
sit down	يجلس	look inside	ينظر للداخل
in the past	في الماضي	on the way home	في طريقك للمنزل

الجد وصندوق ذكرياته Grandpa and his box of memories

انظر واقرأ:

2. Look and read:

"Look, this was my street." Grandpa was very excited. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon.



«انظروا، كان هذا شاري». كان جدي متحمساً للغاية. كنا في القرية التي نشأ فيها. إنها بالقرب من تماثيل ممنون.

"It was very quiet when I lived here," said Grandpa. "Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world." "That's where my friend lived. We played football on this street. There were no cars then."



قال جدي: «كانت القرية هادئة جداً عندما كنت أعيش هنا». «الآن هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم». «هذا هو المكان الذي عاش فيه صديقي. لعبنا كرة القدم في هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات ذلك الحين».

Grandpa looked right and left, and he crossed the road. The road had lots of trucks and cars.

"And this", he said "is where I lived." We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. "Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years ago...." Grandpa looked at the tree. Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started digging. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face.

«انظروا، هذا هو المكان الذي كنت أعيش فيه». نظرنا إلى المكان. لم يكن هناك بيت. كان هناك عشب و شجرة واحدة كبيرة. «همم، أتسأل نفسي. كان ذلك منذ سنوات عديدة...» نظر جدي إلى الشجرة. مشى جدي إلى الشجرة. نظر جدي إلى الأرض. ثم بدأ حفر. سحب جدي صندوقاً قديماً من المعدن. كان عليه ابتسامة كبيرة.

"Look!" he said. He was very excited. "We were eight years old when we buried this. Let's sit down and look inside the box."

"Yes, please," I said. "I'm very curious!"

«انظروا!» قال. كان متحمساً جداً. «كنا سنعملاً عندما دفننا هذا. لننضم وننظر داخل الصندوق».



Find out!

The Colossi of Memnon are two large statues that exist in Luxor. They were built around 1350 BC.

تماثيل ممنون هما تماثيل كبيرتان موجودتان في الأقصر. تم بناؤهما حوالي 1350 قبل الميلاد.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Grandpa's village was very (cold – crowded – quiet – dangerous).
- 2 Grandpa and his friends played (tennis – handball – football – basketball) on this street.
- 3 Grandpa pulled out an old, metal (knife – box – bag – car).

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage

The past simple tense is used for expressing an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي في وقت معين.

Affirmative Form

١. يتكون الفعل في الماضي بإضافة (d/ed /ied) للفعل وتسمى الأفعال المنتظمة (Regular verbs):

1. Regular verbs:

الأفعال المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + d/ed/ied + الفعل في المصدر (inf.)

Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يُضاف لها (ed):

look → looked

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يُضاف لها

(d):

live → lived

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) ،

تُحذف الـ (y) ويُضاف إليها الـ (ied).

bury → buried

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + يسبقه حرف متحرك، يُضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.

stop → stopped

e.g.



We played football on this street.

2. Irregular verbs:

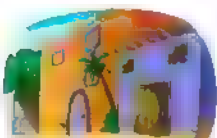
الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

٢. بعض الأفعال لا تقبل بالإضافات وتُغير عند استخدامها في زمن الماضي وتسمى الأفعال غير المنتظمة "Irregular verbs":

e.g.

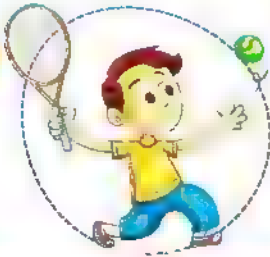
Present		Past	Present		Past
am/ is	يكون (للمفرد)	was	are	يكون (للمجمع)	were
grow	يكبر	grew	say	يقول	said
have	يملك	had	sit	يجلس	sat
feel	يشعر	felt	see	يرى	saw
find	يجد	found	know	يعرف	knew

e.g.



The village was quiet in the past.

Negative Form

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر...He **didn't** play football yesterday.

A: Did + subject + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر...?

B: Yes,

subject

did.

B: No,

didn't.



A: Did you jump high?

B: Yes, I did.



A: Did he play football on this street?

B: No, he didn't.

A: Wh- word ... السؤال ... did ... subject ... (inf.) ...?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...



A: What did the children do yesterday?

B: They played football yesterday.



- عند الإجابة تحول "you" في السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".

Key words

yesterday

أمس

e.g. I went to my school yesterday.

last (week, month, year, etc.)

(لأسبوع أو شهر أو العام) الماضي

e.g. She played tennis last week.

ago

منذ

e.g. We lived here many years ago.

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل «يكون» في زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative Form

He / She / It + was ...

I / We / They / You + were ...

e.g. Grandpa was very excited.

e.g. There were no cars then.

Negative Form

He / She / It + was not (wasn't) ...

I / We / They / You + were not (weren't) ...

e.g. Mom wasn't at home in the morning.

e.g. We weren't happy at the party.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The village (were – are – was – is) very quiet in the past.
- 2 Grandpa (lived – lives – live – living) here so many years ago.
- 3 They (play – played – playing – plays) football in the street last Friday.
- 4 I (don't – doesn't – didn't – isn't) go to school yesterday.
- 5 (Did – Do – Does – Weren't) he do his homework last night?
- 6 There (are – do – were – was) no cars or trucks when we were young.
- 7 There (were – are – was – is) lots of visitors now.



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 I visited my last week.
a) cousin b) grandpa c) friend d) uncle
- 2 He lives in a small
a) city b) desert c) school d) village
- 3 He has an old box.
a) plastic b) metal c) gold d) wooden
- 4 He has a lot of in the box.
a) photos b) money c) food d) gold



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 He the secret message in the ground.
a) dug b) buried c) crossed d) lived
- 2 I was very when I won the game.
a) bad b) excited c) sad d) hungry
- 3 She wants to know everything. She is very
a) curious b) old c) near d) big
- 4 The song him of his happy memories with his friends.
a) sang b) wondered c) reminded d) crossed
- 5 The dog was a hole in the garden.
a) digging b) crossing c) starting d) growing
- 6 The silver spoon is made of
a) glass b) stone c) metal d) paper
- 7 Anas is very happy, he has a big on his face.
a) smile b) frown c) line d) mark
- 8 The road has lots of and cars.
a) animals b) years c) secrets d) trucks

القاهرة - أبريل 2024

المنوفية - إدارة شين 2024



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

tree – farms – road – quiet – cars

الجيزة - 2024

My grandpa lives in a village. Grandpa's village was (1) Now, there are a lot of (2) There were no (3) in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars on the (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I went to visit Grandpa. He lives in a village. Grandpa's village was quiet in the past. Now, there are a lot of visitors from all around the world. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. There were no houses. There was only grass and one big tree. Grandpa played with his friends when he was young. Now, Grandpa is very old.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about my Grandpa's
a) friends b) city c) family d) village
- There weren't any in my Grandpa's village in the past.
a) people b) trees c) cars d) animals

Answer the following questions:

- When did Grandpa play with his friends?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- I lived in Aswan when I (am) six years old. القلوبية - مدينة
- We (play) football yesterday. الجيزة - إدارة البلديات
- Ahmed (visit) his uncle last week. القيوم - إدارة إسطا
- A: Did you ride a bike yesterday? B: No, I (don't). استلوبة - طرح 2024
- What did you (bought) yesterday? الحيزة
- Where did Aya (went) last year? القاهرة - الأزهر الشريف
- They didn't (went) to their school. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق
- Where did Mona (lived)? الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر
- Last week, she (is) at the park. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة
- I (don't) bake a cake yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة
- Grandpa (were) eight years old when he buried his box.
- Now, Grandpa (be) very old.
- A (Was) you tired this morning? B: Yes, I was.
- Ahmed (visit) his uncle last week. القيوم - إسطا 2024
- What subject (do) you study yesterday? الإسماعيلية - ٢٤



A short story



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

hole	حفرة	pleased (adj.)	مسرور	delighted (adj.)	مبتهج / سعيد
excited (adj.)	متحمس	mice	فئران	moral	الدرس الأخلاق (العبرة)

Extra vocabulary

the country	الريف	seeds	بذور	pretty (adj.)	جميل
bright (adj.)	لامع	lights	أضواء	reason	سبب
smoke	دخان	noise	ضوضاء	incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق
loud (adj.)	صاحب	scared (adj.)	خائف	sounds	أصوات
smells	روائح	suddenly	فجأة	voice	صوت (بشري)
bread	خبز	exciting (adj.)	شيق / مثير	life	حياة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال
أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
visit يزور	visited	stop يتوقف / يوقف	stopped
wait ينتظر	waited	rain تمطر	rained
cover يغطي	covered	prepare يعدد / يجهز	prepared

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
give يعطي	gave	come يأتي	came
catch يمسك / يلحق	caught	run يجري	ran

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملء بـ	Why don't you?	لِمَ لا؟ (للاقتراح)
catch a train	يلحق بقطار	just as	في نفس الوقت
(be) prepared for	مستعداً لـ	around the corner	حول ناصية الطريق
go back to	يعود إلى	run away	يهرب



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) حرفان لا ينطقان (s en) كما في كلمات (bright) / (lights) / (delighted) / (eight).

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) قد ينطق /z/ كما في (reason) / (noise) / (was) / (visit).

City Mouse and Country Mouse فـأر المدينة وفـأر الريف



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds.

زار فأر المدينة فأر الريف في حفرة في الأرض. كان فأر الريف مسرورًا. أعطى صديقه العشب والبذور.



The middle

The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?"

The country mouse was delighted and very excited.

The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."

The two friends ran to the train, just as it started to rain.

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared.

He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.

Suddenly, a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two mice and some bread."

فأر المدينة: «شكرًا لك، هل تعلم أن المدينة جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة، فمادًا لا تأتي وري؟» كان فأر الريف متلهف ومحمم سعيد. توقف فأر المدينة عن الأكل وقال: «لا توجد سبب للاسقاط، يمكننا انحاق بقطار في الثامنة» جرى الصديق إلى القطار عندما بدأ المطر يهطل. في المدينة، عطر، دج، سيارات اسحوم وكأب بصوصاء عالية (صاحبه) بشكل «بصدق كار فأر ريف حائفًا، لم يكن مستعدًا للعديد من الأصوات والروائح الجديدة. وفجأة قال قط: «هممم، فأران وبعض الخبز».

The end

"Run, run, run" said the city mouse. They ran around the corner. The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

وقد المدينة «جرى، جرى، وكص» صه طريق وف فأر ريف، «شكرًا لك صديق، المدينة رائعة ولكن حان وقتي لعودتي إلى الريف والعودة إلى حيث تكون الحياة جيدة بالنسبة لي».

Check

Choose the correct answer:


اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Mice live in (walls - halls - holes - doors) in the ground.
- 2 The city is full of bright (lights seeds grass - trees).

Take care!

(١) تتغير بعض الكلمات تمامًا في صيغة الجمع ولا تتبع القواعد.

e.g.

Singular			Plural		
	a mouse	فأر		mice	فئران
	a man	رجل		men	رجال

(٢) تنتهي بعض الصفات بـ (ing) والبعض الآخر ينتهي بـ (ed):

(ing) adjectives

لوصف الشيء / الشخص الذي يسبب الشعور.



- The city is **exciting**.

- The football player was **amazing**.

- لاعب كرة القدم كان مذهلاً.

(ed) adjectives

لوصف المشاعر. لإخبارنا كيف يشعر الناس.



The city mouse was very **excited**.

فأر المدينة كان متحمساً جداً.

What do you like about the country/city and what don't you like?

ما الذي يعجبك في (البلد/المدينة) وما الذي لا يعجبك؟

الإيجابيات Pros

In the country: There are few sounds and smells.

هناك أصوات وروائح قليلة.

In the city: It is pretty and full of bright lights.

إنها جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة.

السلبيات Cons

Life is slow and too quiet.

الحياة بطيئة وهادئة للغاية.

The smoke from the cars covers the stars and the noise is incredibly loud.

يغطي دخان السيارات النجوم والضوضاء عالية بشكل لا يصدق.

Tip!

A moral is a **value** you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.

الدرس الأخلاقي (عبرة) هي قيمة تتعلمها من قصة تقرأها أو من موقف في الحياة.

e.g. The story has a moral. It says that different people like different things.

القصة لها درس أخلاقي (عبرة). تقول إن الأشخاص المختلفين يحبون أشياء مختلفة.



Pronunciation

Long Vowels الحروف المتحركة الطويلة

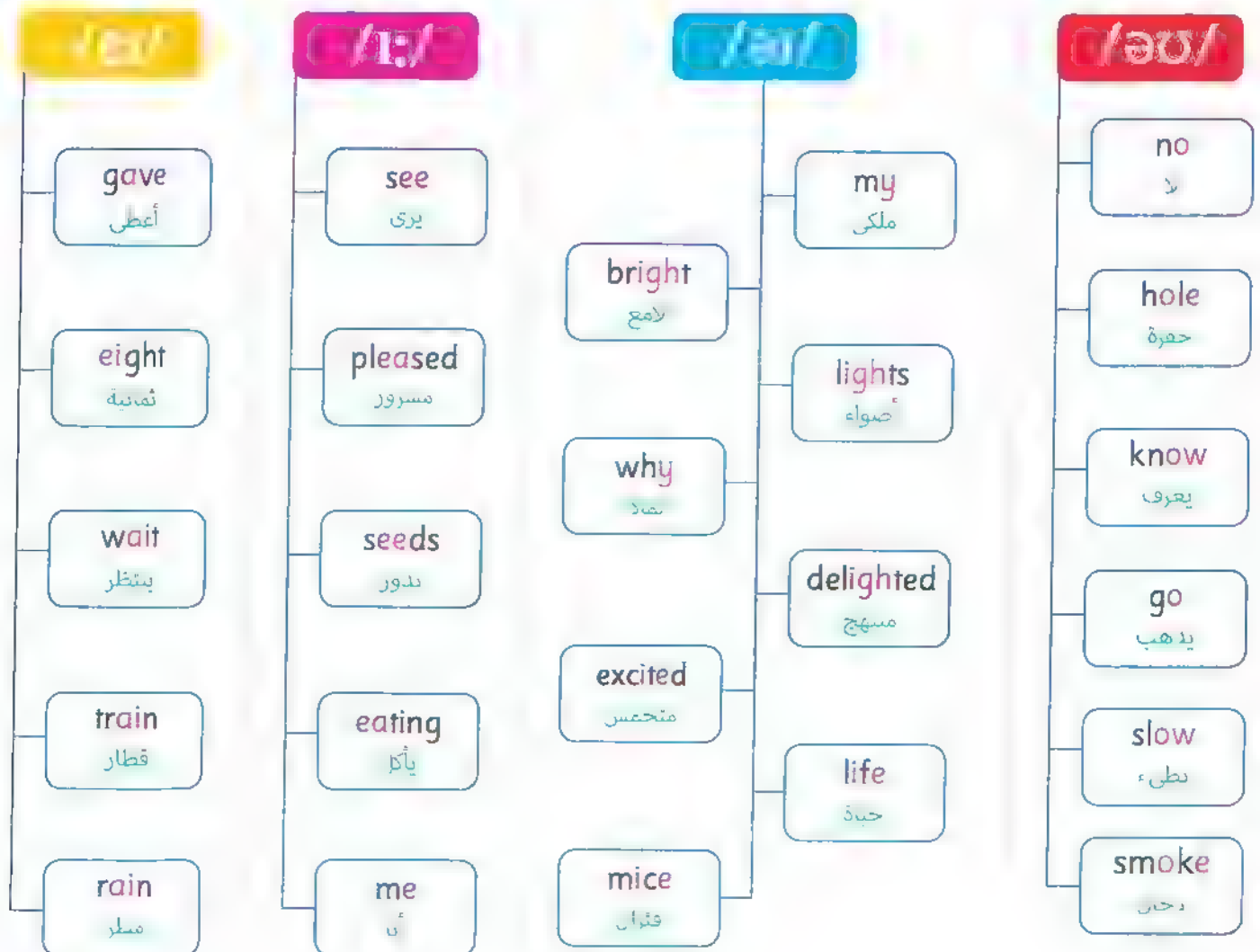


3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Long vowels:



We use different letter combinations to pronounce the same sound.

نستخدم حروفًا مدمجة مختلفة لنطق نفس الصوت.

e.g. gave (a-e) /eɪ/

wait (ai) /eɪ/



4. Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Numerator $\rightarrow \frac{1}{2}$ \leftarrow Denominator
(البسط) (المقام)

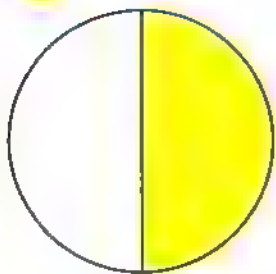
bigger than

>

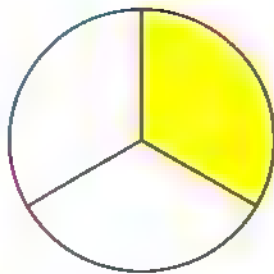
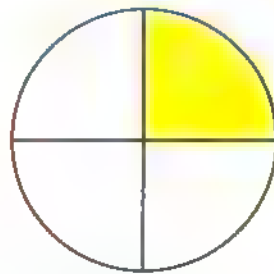
smaller than

the same as

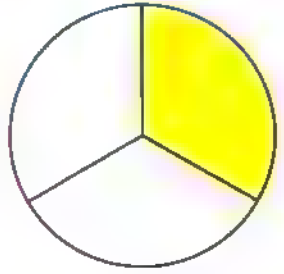
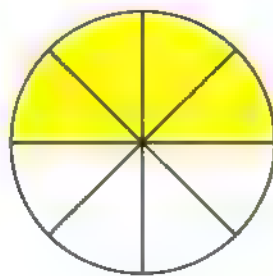
=



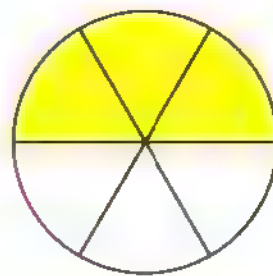
>


 $\frac{1}{2}$ is bigger than $\frac{1}{3}$


<


 $\frac{1}{4}$ is smaller than $\frac{1}{3}$


=


 $\frac{4}{8}$ is the same as $\frac{3}{6}$

Tip!

We can make a fraction simpler by dividing a numerator and denominator by the same number.

يمكننا تبسيط الكسر عن طريق قسمة البسط والمقام على نفس الرقم.

e.g.

$$\frac{10}{40} = \frac{10 \div 10}{40 \div 10} = \frac{1}{4}$$



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 The city mouse visited the country mouse
a) tomorrow b) yesterday c) last week d) last month
- 2 The country mouse was and excited.
a) scared b) sad c) angry d) pleased
- 3 The two mice took the to the city.
a) bus b) train c) car d) bike
- 4 The life in the city isn't for the country mouse.
a) good b) excited c) bad d) delighted

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The mouse was in his in the ground.
a) hole b) seed c) train d) book
الحجرة - نوحه الدعة الإنجليزية 2024
- 2 I was too late, so I couldn't the bus.
a) eat b) put c) catch d) read
الشرقية - إدارة فافوس 2024
- 3 I was to read the new story. It was funny.
a) scared b) pleased c) angry d) sad
الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 4 I got up suddenly when I heard some sounds.
a) loud b) noise c) moral d) pleased
الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 5 The city is full of bright
a) grass b) plants c) lights d) animals
الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 6 Mice are always of cats.
a) happy b) scared c) pleased d) excited
الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 7 The city is very busy and
a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) free
الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 8 Farmers live in a
a) village b) town c) city d) street
البحر الأحمر - الغردقة 2024
- 9 "Delighted" is the opposite of ".....".
a) sad b) noisy c) big d) pleased
البحر الأحمر - الغردقة 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

grass – mouse – hole – catch – train

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his (1) in the ground.
The country (2) was pleased. He gave his friend (3)
and seeds. The city mouse said, "Thank you". The city mouse stopped eating and
ran to (4) a train at eight.

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

لغوية - القاهر 2024

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The two friends ran to the train to go to the city. In the city, the smoke from the cars covers the stars and the noise was loud. The country mouse was scared. He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells. The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- This general idea of the text is about in the city and the country.
a) life b) farming c) sports d) work
- The underlined word "pleased" means very
a) sad b) happy c) busy d) worried

Answer the following questions:

- Where did the city mouse visit the country mouse?
.....
- What did the country mouse give to the city mouse?
.....

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

- where did the country mouse live

القاهرة : إدارة مدينة نصر 2024

- the country mouse gave his friend grass

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

أسبوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

"Life in the country"

quiet – trees – trucks





1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

nervous (adj)	عصبي / متوتر	backpack	حقيبة الظهر	gate	بوابة
neighborhood	حي سكني	town	مدينة صغيرة	neighbors	جيران
gas car	سيارات تعمل بالوقود	electricity	الكهرباء	shopping mall	مول تجاري

Extra vocabulary

first day	اليوم الأول	toys	ألعاب	gray	رمادي
pants	بنطلون	classroom	فصل دراسي	kind	طيب / عطوف
math	رياضيات	fun (adj.)	ممتع	new (adj.)	جديد
history	تاريخ	project	مشروع	photos	صور
noisy (adj.)	مزيج	shopping area	منطقة تسوق	shoe store	متجر أحذية
modern (adj.)	حديث	research	بحث	buildings	مبانٍ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
remember	تذكر	stay	يبقى
carry	يحمل	walk	يمشي
cry	يبكي	study	يدرس
remembered		stayed	
carried		walked	
cried		studied	

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
put on	يرتدي	sit	يجلس
learn	يتعلم	drive	يقود
wear	يرتدي	speak	يتحدث
put on		sat	
learned/ learnt		drove	
wore		spoke	

Expressions and Phrases

start school	يبدأ العام الدراسي	say goodbye	يودع
(be) called	يُسمى / يُدعى	then and now	في الماضي والحاضر
do project	يقوم بمشروع	find out	يكتشف
as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع	much cleaner and quieter	أكثر هدوءًا ونظافة
on Saturdays	في أيام السبت	do research	يقوم ببحث

Important sentences

- * Younis remembered his first day of school. * تذكر يونس يومه الأول في المدرسة.
- * He wanted to play with his toys, he didn't want to go to school. * أراد اللعب بألعابه، ولم يكن يريد الذهاب إلى المدرسة.
- * He sat next to a boy called Marwan. * جلس بجانب ولد اسمه مروان.
- * They studied math and played games; it was fun! * درسوا الرياضيات ولعبوا الألعاب؛ كان الأمر ممتعًا!
- * The next day, he wasn't nervous. He was excited. * في اليوم التالي، لم يكن متوترًا. كان متحمسًا.



Writing



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My first day of school

by Younis

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan.

I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school.

أتذكر يومي الأول في المدرسة، كنت في السادسة من عمري، وتشت في أسوان. كنت متوترًا للغاية. أحببت البقاء في المنزل مع عائلتي. أردت أن أعبأ بألعابي، لم أريد في الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes.

I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.

ارتديت تيشرت أزرق، وبنطلونًا رماديًا، وحذاء أسود. حملت حقيبة الظهر. مشيت أذا وأمي إلى المدرسة.

At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom.

The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan.

The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

عندما كنت في الباب المدرسي، أردت أن أبكي. قلت وداعًا وذهبت إلى الصف. سألتني المعلمة أن أجلس بجانب صبي اسمه مروان. المعلمة كانت لطيفة جدًا. درسنا الرياضيات ولعبنا الألعاب؛ كان الأمر ممتعًا!!

The next day, I wasn't nervous. I was excited. I wanted to see my new friend, Marwan. I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.

في اليوم التالي، لم أكن متوترًا. كنت متحمسًا. أردت أن أرى صديقي الجديد مروان وأريد أن أرى معلمتي. أردت أن أتعلم الرياضيات وأريد أن أذهب إلى المدرسة.



Tip!

When we write notes, we use key words. We do not write sentences. We can use our notes to plan writing.

عندما نكتب ملاحظات، نستخدم الكلمات الرئيسية. نحن لا نكتب جمل. يمكننا استخدام ملاحظاتنا للتخطيط للكتابة.

How to write about your first day at school.

كيفية الكتابة عن يومك الأول في المدرسة:

How did you feel

يَمَرُّ شعرت؟

What did you wear?

ماذا ارتديت؟

Describe the teacher.

Was he/she kind?

صف المعلم. هل كان طيبًا؟

Did you like your first day?

هل أحببت يومك الأول في المدرسة؟

Did you want to go back to school the next day?

هل كنت ترغب في العودة إلى المدرسة في اليوم التالي؟

What did you wear? : _____

How did you feel?

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous.

I didn't want to go to school. I put on a red shirt, black pants, and white shoes.

I carried my backpack. My sister and I walked to school. The teacher was very kind.

We studied math and played games there. I liked my first day at school.

I wanted to go back to school the next day to see my friend.

Did you want to go back to school the next day?

Did you like your first day?

Describe the teacher. Was he/she kind?



Project

My town then and now

We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older neighbors to find out as much as possible.

قدر الإمكان.



Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were gas cars. They were very noisy.

تقول الجدة إن أمها وأبها كانا يقودان سيارات كهذه. كانت جميع السيارات تسير بالوقود. كانت تسبب في الكثير من الضوضاء.



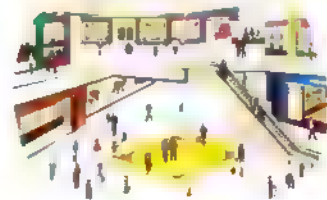
Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter.

الآن لدينا سيارة تسير بالكهرباء والوقود. إنها أقل تلويثًا وأكثر هدوءًا.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

كانت مدينتنا بها منطقة تسوق، لكنها كانت قديمة جدًا. كان أبي يعمل في متجر أحذية أيام السبت.



Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

اليوم لدينا مركز تسوق حديث وكبير، لكني لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

Check

1 Why does Seleem like modern cars?

SB

2 How was the shopping area in Seleem's town in the past?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My dad bought a new electric car last week. It's
a) old b) tall c) slow d) modern
- 2 We are a history project about Cairo.
a) doing b) making c) thinking d) walking
- 3 I see my friends every day because we live in the same
a) class b) neighborhood c) store d) school
- 4 I have an exam tomorrow. I'm very
a) noisy b) tall c) nervous d) clean
- 5 I a blue T-shirt and gray pants for school.
a) carry b) find c) put on d) look
- 6 We math.
a) played b) studied c) helped d) walked
- 7 I carry my to school.
a) couch b) backpack c) bed d) desk

بنى سويف - أمانة الواسطى 2024

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

played – nervous – six – toys – school

بنى سويف - إدارة ببا 2024

I remember my first day of school. I was (1) years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very (2) I liked staying at home with my family, I wanted to play with my (3) I didn't want to go to (4) After I knew my teachers and classmates, I loved the school.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ali. I'm doing a history project in school with my friends about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older neighbors to find out as much as possible. Grandma says that her mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter. Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Ali's then and now.
a) family b) town c) photo d) friends
- 2 Ali is doing a/an project.
a) science b) math c) English d) history

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How were the gas cars in the past?

.....

- 4 Where did Ali's father work?

.....



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم يدني:

dad worked in a shoe store on saturdays.

.....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 18 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"My first day of school"

جواب عند
صفحة
254

nervous – teacher – backpack

القاهرة إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

city	مدينة كبيرة	quiz	اختبار
building	مبنى	interesting	شيق
river	نهر	the widest	الأوسع
forest	غابة	center	مركز
desert	صحراء	the longest	الأطول
village	قرية	crocodile	تمساح
oasis	واحة	branch	فرع
mountain	جبل	reptiles	رواحف

Lesson (2)

memories	ذكريات	inside	داخل
trucks	شاحنات	village	قرية
curious	فضول	easy	سهل
excited	متحمس	games	ألعاب
quiet	هادئ	subjects	مواد
visitors	زوار	pull	يسحب
ground	أرض	bury	يدفن
metal	معدني	grow up	يكبر
smile	ابتسامة	dig	يحفر

Lesson (3)

hole	حفرة	pretty	جميل
pleased	مسرور	bright	لامع
delighted	مبهج	reason	سبب
excited	متحمس	smoke	دخان
mice	فئران	noise	ضوضاء
moral	عبرة	loud	صاخب
the country	الريف	scared	خائف
seeds	بذور	voice	صوت

Lessons (4 & 5)

nervous	متوتر	pants	بنتلون
backpack	حقيرة ظهر	neighborhood	حي سكني
gate	بوابة	gas car	سيارة تعمل بالوقود
neighbors	جيران	noisy	مزعج
electricity	الكهرباء	shoe store	متجر أحذية
toys	ألعاب	modern	حديث
gray	رمادي	shopping mall	مول تجاري
classroom	فصل دراسي	town	مدينة صغيرة

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

1. Regular verbs:

Subject (المفعول) + (inf.) + (ed/d/ied)...

The children **played** football.



2. Irregular verbs:

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

The village **was** quiet in the past.



Negative Form:

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) ...

He **didn't** play football yesterday.



Yes/No Question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) ... ؟

B: Yes,	subject	d'd
B: No,		didn't.



A: Did you play football?

B: Yes, I did.

Wh- question:

A: Question word | **did** | subject | (inf.) ... ؟

B: Subject (المفعول) + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

A: How did you go to school?

B: I went by bus.





تأكد من حفظك للكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....	اختبار	.....	مبنى
.....	نهر النيل	.....	مدينة
.....	الأطول	.....	غابة
.....	فرع	.....	نهر
.....	جبل	.....	قرية
.....	واحة	.....	صحراء

Lesson 2

.....	أرض	.....	ذكريات
.....	زوار	.....	فضولى
.....	معدنى	.....	هادئ
.....	شاحنات	.....	ابتسامة
.....	يسحب	.....	قرية
.....	يدفن	.....	طريق
.....	يحفر	.....	عشب

Lesson 3

.....	سبب	.....	فئران
.....	جميل	.....	مسرور
.....	الريف	.....	عبرة (درس أخلاقى)
.....	متحمس	.....	صوت
.....	حفرة	.....	خائف
.....	أضواء	.....	ضوضاء
.....	صاحب	.....	روائح
.....	بذور	.....	دخان
.....	لامع	.....	مبتهج

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	حديث	.....	متوتر
.....	بنطلون	.....	جيران
.....	الكهرباء	.....	حقيبة ظهر
.....	بوابة	.....	رمادى
.....	ألعاب	.....	متجر أحذية



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about the Nile:

- The Nile is + **صفة يتميز بها نهر النيل مثل أنه أطول نهر**
- It is + **طول نهر النيل**
- It has + **عدد الفروع في مصر**
- The Nile helps + **اذكر كيف يساعد نهر النيل على الحياة في مصر**

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is 6,670 kilometers long. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile helps farmers grow their plants. Many types of fish can live in the Nile.

How to write about your first day of school:

- I was + **عمرك في أول يوم دراسي**
- I was + **وصف مشاعرك في أول يوم دراسي**
- I put on + **وصف الزي المدرسي وألوانه**
- I met + **اسم أول صديق قابلته**
- The next day, **كيف كنت في اليوم التالي**

"My first day of school"

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous and didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants. I met a new friend called Ali. The next day, I wasn't nervous and I wanted to see my new friend.

How to write about your town in the past and now:

- My town was + **حالة المدينة في الماضي**
Now, it's + **حالة المدينة الآن**
- There were + **عدد السيارات في الماضي**
Now, there are + **عدد السيارات الآن**
- We had + **اختراعات قديمة في الماضي**
Now we have + **اختراعات حديثة**

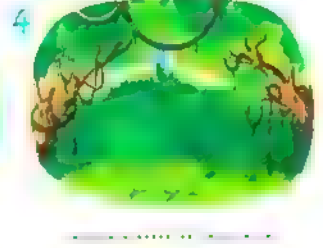
"My town"

My town was very quiet in the past. Now it's busy and there are a lot of people. We had no cars in the past. Now, there are many cars and trucks. We had gas cars in the past. They were noisy. Now we have electric cars. They are much quieter.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and write:

building – city – desert – forest – mountain – oasis – river – village



2 Complete the sentences with (is - are - was - were):

- 1 Grandpa's village very quiet.
Now, there a lot of people.
- 2 There no cars in the past.
Now, there a lot of trucks and cars.
- 3 Grandpa eight years old when he
buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa
..... very old.



3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:

Last year, I (visit) my Grandpa's village. It (be) a quiet, but
beautiful place. There (be) lots of trees, but there (not be)
any trains. Grandpa's parents (move) to this village when he
..... (be) three. He (play) football near his home.



Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- 1 I remember my day of school.
a) second b) last c) first d) third
- 2 I put on a T-shirt.
a) black b) blue c) yellow d) red
- 3 I carried my
a) book b) chair c) bottle d) backpack
- 4 My drove me to school.
a) brother b) mother c) father d) grandma



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- 1 The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) longest c) tallest d) widest
- 2 There are a lot of trees in the
a) mountain b) sea c) desert d) forest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

worked – modern – don't – Saturdays – doesn't

Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad (1) in a shoe store on (2) Today, we have a big (3) shopping mall, but I (4) like shopping! I want to play football.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

5

Our grandpa lived in a village many years ago. He loved his village very much. Our grandpa's village was very quiet. He liked green plants. Our grandpa visited our city last year. He was excited to visit the city. When he walked into our city, he was sad to see a lot of cars and trucks in the city. The city is very noisy. He wanted to come back to his village. He didn't like the city.

انشر في: إدارة سرب الرقابة 2024

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Our grandpa lived in a many years ago.
a) city b) town c) park d) village
- 2 The city is very
a) quiet b) noisy c) happy d) calm

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How was Grandpa's village?
.....

- 4 When did Grandpa visit the city?
.....



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

8

- 1 He (have) a party last week.

القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

- 2 Did you (ate) healthy food?

الشرقية - إدارة الإبراهيمية 2024

- 3 She (doesn't) buy a new dress last week.

الشرقية - عرب البرقاريق 2024

- 4 Mona didn't (went) to school yesterday.

البحيرة - لدمرارة 2024



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

akram pulled out an old, metal box

إدارة السلام 2024



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الآتية:

الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد 2024

"My town"

noisy – shopping mall – modern

كتاب لغة
الصفحة
254



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

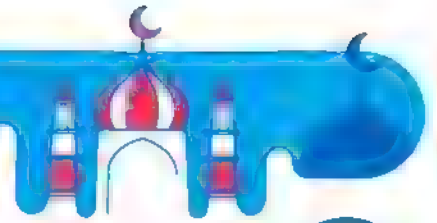
50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

Well done!



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

اسمع واحتر الإجابة الصحيحة:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Grandpa's village was very
(polluted – noisy – quiet)
- 2 There were no in the past.
(cars – people – children)
- 3 Now, there are a lot of and cars.
(tablets – trucks – televisions)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

kilometers – longest – River – long

Sara : What do you know about the(1)..... Nile?

Hana : It's the(2)..... river in the world.

Sara : How(3)..... is it?

Hana : It's 6,670(4)..... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Samy visited his grandpa in Tanta where he lives. He took the train there. When he arrived, Grandpa met him at the train station. Samy's grandpa was very happy and excited. He showed Samy around the city. Grandpa told Samy that Tanta was very quiet when he was young. There weren't many cars or shops. Now, life is different. There are many cars on the roads. There are many shops and big shopping malls, too.

Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where did Grandpa meet Samy?
- 2 How is life in Tanta now?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 3 Samy's Grandpa lives in
a) Cairo b) Giza c) Tanta d) Alexandria
- 4 Samy took the to Tanta.
a) car b) taxi c) train d) bus
- 5 Samy's Grandpa was very
a) sad b) happy c) tired d) nervous



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

find out how to use quantifiers.
practice using past simple irregular verbs.
discuss and write about festivals.
read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations.
talk about special family days.
practice fractions and decimals.
write about a special day.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

يكتشف كيفية استخدام محدّدات الكميات.
يتدرب على استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.
يتناقش ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.
يقرأ عن المهرجانات، المصرية والاحتفالات.
يتحدث عن المناسبات العائلية الخاصة.
يتدرب على الكسور والأعداد العشرية.
يكتب عن يوم مميز.

Did you know?

In Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is * semolina with meat and/or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a * dessert.

Find out!

People eat different foods to * celebrate * festivals. Biryani is a popular rice dish from South Asia. Maqluba is popular in Middle Eastern countries and * consists of fried vegetables, meat, and rice cooked together in a pot which is then * flipped upside down.

* semolina

دقيق السميد

* dessert

تحلية * celebrate

يحتفل

* festival

احتفال

* consist of

يتكون من

* flipped upside down

انقلب رأسًا على عقب



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

Quantifiers:

محددات الكمية:

a packet of عبة من

a packet of cookies
عبوة من البسكويت (الكوكيز)

a bar of قالب من

a bar of chocolate
قالب من الشوكولاتة

a carton of عبة من

a carton of juice
عبوة من العصيرa packet of candies
عبوة من الحلوىa bar of soap
قالب من الصابونa carton of milk
عبوة من اللبن

a bottle of زجاجة من

a bottle of water
زجاجة من المياه

a slice of شريحة من

a slice of cake
شريحة من الكيك

a piece of قطعة من

a piece of cheese
قطعة من الجبنa bottle of milk
زجاجة من اللبنa slice of pizza
شريحة من البيتزاa piece of bread
قطعة من الخبزa bottle of lemonade
زجاجة من عصير الليمونa slice of meat
شريحة من اللحم

Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ck) ينطقان /k/ (ك) كما في (packet).

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما في (juice) / (slice) / (piece).

Extra vocabulary

party	حفلة	well	حسنًا / بخير	only	فقط
maybe	ربما	horrible (adj.)	فظيع	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان
all	كل	food	طعام	cola	كولا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
feel يشعر	felt	eat يأكل	ate
have يملك / يتناول	had	drink يشرب	drank

Expressions and Phrases

What happened ...?	ماذا حدث ...؟	have fun	يستمتع
look a bit green	يبدو مريضًا	What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟
Oh, dear.	يا عزيزي. (للتعاطف)	feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة
Anything else?	أى شيء آخر؟	too much	كثير جدًا
That's horrible!	هذا فظيع!	Is that all?	هل هذا كل شيء؟
Oh, no!	أوه لا! (للتعجب)	That's why ...	لهذا ...

Important sentences جملة هامة

- * Reem had fun at the party. استمتعت ريم بالحفل.
- * She looked a bit green. بدت مريضة قليلاً.
- * She had a slice of cake, a bar of chocolate, a piece of cheese, and a packet of cookies. تناولت قطعة من الكعكة، وقطعة من الشوكولاتة، وقطعة من الجبن وعبوة من البسكويت.
- * She drank a carton of juice and a bottle of water. شربت علبة عصير وزجاجة ماء.



Choose the correct answer:

- I bought a carton of (meat – milk – cookies – candies) for my mom.
- I bought a bottle of water because I was (hungry – cold – thirsty – well).
- Nadia bought three (bars – bottles – slices – cartons) of soap yesterday.
- It's unhealthy to eat too many (bottles – packets – slices – cartons) of cake.
- I had two pieces of (juice – lemonade – bread – milk) with beans for breakfast.
- Yesterday was my birthday (school – party – bottle – pizza).



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

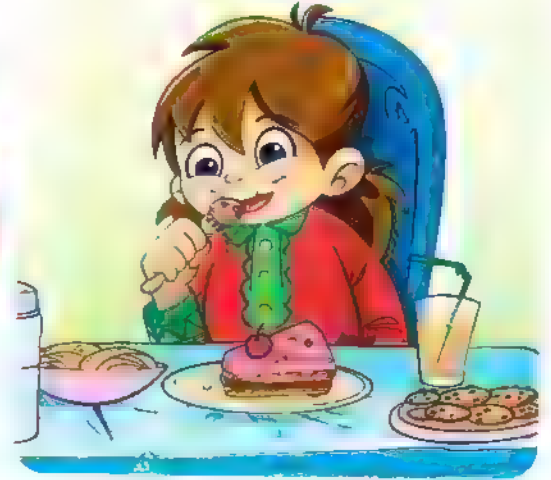


Did you have fun at the party, Reem?

هل استمتعت بالحفلة يا ريم؟

Yes, thank you.

نعم، شكرًا لك.



What's the matter?
You look a bit green.

ما الأمر؟ تبدين مريضة قليلًا.

Hmm, I don't feel well.

مممم، لا أشعر أنني بحالة جيدة.



Oh, dear. Did you eat too much?

يا عزيزتي. هل أكلت كثيرًا؟

I only had a slice of cake.

لقد تناولت فقط شريحة من الكعكة.



Anything else?

هل من شيء آخر؟

No.... I drank some juice.

لا... شربت بعض العصير.



Some juice?

بعض العصير؟

Well, a carton of juice.

حسنًا، علبة من العصير.





Is that all?

هل هذا كل شيء؟



Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one... and a piece of cheese.

ربما قالب من الشوكولاتة ، واحد فقط صغير... وقطعة من الجبن.



Cheese and chocolate? That's horrible!

الجبن والشوكولاتة؟ هذا فظيع!

That's why I ate some cookies.

لهذا أكلت بعض البسكويت.



How many cookies did you eat?

كم عدد رقائق البسكويت التي أكلتها؟



A ... packet ... of cookies.

عبوة ... من البسكويت.



Oh, no!

أوه لا!

I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.

كنت عطشانة بعد كل ذلك الطعام، لذلك تناولت زجاجة من المياه.



Take care!

بعض الكلمات قد تأتي فعلًا (verb) أو اسمًا (noun):

e.g. slice (v.)

يقطع



slice (n.)

شريحة





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
إدارة القرن التعليمية - الشرقية 2024



- 1 Yesterday was too
a) cold b) hot c) rainy d) cloudy
- 2 I drank bottles of water.
a) five b) three c) two d) four
- 3 My sister drank a bottle of
a) lemonade b) cola c) chocolate d) butter
- 4 I used a of soap to wash my face and hands.
a) slice b) bar c) bottle d) packet

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I want to buy a of chocolate.
a) bag b) bar c) bottle d) slice
الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزهر ثان التعليمية 2024
- 2 She is eating a piece of
a) water b) soap c) juice d) cheese
بورسعيد - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
- 3 Hend bought a of cookies yesterday.
a) packet b) bar c) slice d) bottle
انتاخره - إدارة لسلام 2024
- 4 She looks a bit She is tired.
a) brown b) yellow c) blue d) green
القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
- 5 I drank a of juice.
a) packet b) bar c) slice d) carton
الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
- 6 Adel drank a of water.
a) bottle b) bar c) piece d) slice
الجيزة - البلوشين 2024
- 7 I was very, so I drank a glass of water.
a) hungry b) angry c) thirsty d) sad
الإسماعيلية 2024
- 8 We are eating of pizza.
a) bottles b) bars c) cups d) slices
الجيزة 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheese – packet – bottles – slices – soap

محافظة القاهرة - مطعة إدارة مليونبوليس التعليمية 2024

My friends went to the supermarket yesterday at night. They bought many things. Nada bought two (1) of milk. Mona bought two bars of (2), three pieces of (3) and a (4) of cookies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marwa went to her friend's birthday party yesterday. She had fun at the party. There was a big table with many types of foods on it. Marwa was hungry. She ate two slices of cake and drank a carton of mango juice. The cookies looked delicious, and Marwa wanted to try them. She ate a packet of cookies and drank a bottle of water because she felt thirsty. On her way home, Marwa didn't feel well. She looked a bit green.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Marwa went to a yesterday.
a) park b) club c) birthday party d) class
- 2 The underlined expression "looked a bit green" means
a) excited b) happy c) sick d) fun

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Marwa eat at the birthday party?

.....

- 4 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

he had a bottle of water

2024 - 2023

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Food and drinks"

packet – bottle – piece

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A poem قصيدة شعر



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

poem	قصيدة شعر	beach	شاطئ	trip	رحلة قصيرة
octopus	أخطبوط	dish	طبق / وجبة	dessert	تحلية

Extra vocabulary

weekend	الإجازة الأسبوعية	Damietta	دمياط	deep (adj.)	عميق
lovely (adj.)	جميل	meal	وجبة	healthy (adj.)	صحي
frozen (adj.)	مجمد	yogurt	زبادي	photos	صور
soon	قريبًا	September	شهر سبتمبر	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
pizza	بيتزا	video	فيديو	song	أغنية
time	الوقت	movie	فيلم	sugar	سكر
swimming test	اختبار السباحة	tired (adj.)	مُعب	memory	دكري

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
live يعيش	lived	remember يتذكر	remembered
rain تمطر	rained	use يستخدم	used

Expressions and Phrases

by the sea	بجانب البحر	lots of	الكثير من
make into	يحول إلى	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة
a day to remember	يوم للذكرى / يوم لا يُنسى	early September	في أوائل سبتمبر
instead of	بدلاً من	It was fun!	كان الأمر ممتعاً!
feel sick	يشعر بالمرض	It tasted horrible!	مذاقها سيئ للغاية!

Take care!

بعض الكلمات متشابهة في النطق لكنها تختلف في المعنى والهجاء.

eg. 1 see يرى / sea بحر

2 by بواحدة / bye إلى اللقاء

3 too أيضاً / two اثنين

4 coat بالبط / caught مكن

الغافية: تطابق الصوت بين نهاية الكلمات في نهايات السطور في القصيدة.

eg. 1 blue أزرق / too أيضاً

2 song أغنية / long طويل



Our Trip To The Sea رحلتنا إلى البحر



2. Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.

We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.

We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish!

We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert, Bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt.

We saw some old photos and sang a song,

But time was short. The day wasn't long.

We felt happy. It was a day to remember.

We will go again soon, early September!



الأسبوع الماضي ذهبنا إلى دمياط لرؤية جدتي وجدتي، الذين يعيشون بالقرب من البحر.

السبح و أخطبوطاً أيضاً

اصطاد جدي سمكة، وحولتها جدتي إلى وجبة لذيذة. تناولنا الوجبة وتحلية صحية، موز، تفاح وزبادي مجمد.

رأينا صوراً قديمة، غانمنا أغنية، لكن الوقت قصير. اليوم لم يكن طويلاً. كنا سعداء. كان يوماً لا ننسى.

قريباً، في أوائل سبتمبر

Check

1 When did the children go to Damietta?

.....

2 What did their grandpa catch?

.....

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل



I ate pizza yesterday.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + didn't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

I didn't have fish yesterday.



Yes/No Question: السؤال بـهل:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) ...? الفعل في المصدر

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g. 1 A: Did you have fun?

B: Yes, I did.

e.g. 2 A: Did they have fish for lunch?

B: No, they didn't.

Wh-Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

A Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام | did | subject | (inf.) ...? الفعل في المصدر

B: Subject (فاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

e.g. A: What did you do last weekend?

B: I swam in the sea.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	go يذهب	went
swim يعمد	swam	forget ينسى	forgot
eat يأكل	ate	cut يقطع	cut
sing يغنى	sang	come يأتي	came
catch يمسك / يصطاد	caught	say يقول	said
buy يشتري	bought	run يجرى	ran
fly يطير	flew	have يملك / يتناول	had
hear يسمع	heard	make يصنع	made
give يعطي	gave	am/is يكون (للمفرد)	was
write يكتب	wrote	are يكون (للمجمع)	were
throw يرمي	threw	drink يشرب	drank

Check

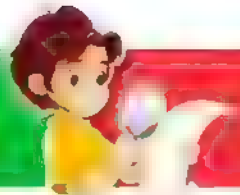
Choose the correct answer:

- 1 She (buy – buys – buying – bought) a new dress for the party yesterday.
- 2 They (fly – flying – flew – flies) their kites last week.
- 3 My friends (isn't – aren't – wasn't – weren't) at school last week.
- 4 We (felt – feel – feels – feeling) happy yesterday.
- 5 I (watch – watched – watches – watching) a great movie last night.
- 6 We (see – saw – seeing – sees) some old photos. They were amazing.

SB

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My dad (catch) a fish last weekend.
- 2 My friends (give) me presents on my last birthday.
- 3 I (feel) sick last night.
- 4 She didn't (got) up early yesterday.
- 5 I (visit) my grandpa three days ago.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 Last weekend we went to
a) Cairo b) Damietta c) Giza d) Alex
- 2 My grandparents live by the
a) sea b) village c) school d) river
- 3 The water was deep and
a) red b) black c) blue d) yellow
- 4 We saw lots of fish, and a/an
a) octopus b) insect c) spider d) eagle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 This food isn't good. It tastes
a) good b) delicious c) sad d) horrible
- 2 It's healthy to have frozen instead of chocolate.
a) water b) fish c) yogurt d) vegetables
- 3 We had fun yesterday. It's a day to
a) eat b) go c) remember d) forget
- 4 They sang a and felt excited.
a) fish b) song c) dish d) photo
- 5 Bananas and apples are dessert.
a) bad b) unhealthy c) healthy d) hot
- 6 It's not safe for children to swim here, it's very
a) deep b) warm c) good d) nice
- 7 The lives in the sea.
a) elephant b) camel c) octopus d) horse

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

octopus – dessert – swam – caught – catch

إدارة السلام 2024

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We (1) in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an (2), too! Grandpa (3) a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy (4), bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend we went to Alexandria to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw a lot of fish and an octopus, too. My grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish. We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert, bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song, but time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) friends b) foods c) a trip to the sea d) sports
- The underlined word "lovely" means
a) delicious b) big c) bad d) sad

Answer the following questions:

- Where did they go last week?
.....
- What did they have for dessert?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- He (give) his brother a present last Friday. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- What did Magdy (wore) yesterday? القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- She (leave) home early yesterday. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- How (is) your town in the past? القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- I didn't (drank) a bottle of water. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- Noha (don't) watch TV yesterday. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- She (writes) a paragraph yesterday. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- Hager (gets) a nice dress last night. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- He (have) a party last week. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- My grandma (lives) in a village when she was young. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- My grandmother (visit) us last month. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- Nada (win) the race last month. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We (was) happy. القائمة - إدارة - 2024
- She (eats) a slice of cake yesterday. القائمة - إدارة - 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

- They live in alexandria القائمة - إدارة - 2024
.....
- We went to damietta last week القائمة - إدارة - 2024
.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"A trip to the sea"

- beach – caught a fish – had fun

.....

.....

.....

.....



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

festival	مهرجان/ عيد	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	Muslim	مسلم
Eid	العيد	sunset	غروب الشمس	Islamic month	شهر إسلامي (هجري)
kahk	كعك	Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك/ عيد سعيد	celebration	احتفال
mosque	مسجد	Sham El-Nessim	عيد شم النسيم	Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي

Extra vocabulary

article	مقالة	American (adj.)	أمريكي	information	معلومات
Ramadan	شهر رمضان	different (adj.)	مختلف	Shawwal	شهر شوال
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)	nuts	مكسرات
sugar	سكر	honey	عسل	bakery	مخبز
after	بعد	salted fish	سمك مملح	colored (adj.)	ملون
oldest (adj.)	أقدم	picnic	نزهة	together	معًا

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
add	added	happen	happened
fast	fasted	celebrate	celebrated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
mean	meant	buy	bought
teach	taught	spend	spent

Expressions and Phrases

is called	يُدعى/ يُسمى	during the day	أثناء النهار	do well	يؤدي جيدًا
do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل	a time for being happy	وقت لتكون سعيدًا	spend time	يقضي وقتًا



Important sentences ← **جمل هامة**

- * Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامي.
- * Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month called Shawwal. يصادف العيد اليوم الأول من الشهر الهجري العاشر الذي يسمى شوال.
- * Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate. الكعك هو كعك لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال.
- * Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too. تصنع العديد من العائلات الكحك، ولكن يمكنك شراءه من المخبز أيضًا.
- * People go to the mosque and spend time with their friends. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع أصدقائهم.

Take care!

- أسماء الأيام والأشهر والأعياد هي أسماء أعلام، لذا يجب أن تبدأ بأحرف كبيرة.

e.g. Eid Al-Fitr

Shawwal

Ramadan

[illegible]

كحك kahk - شهر شوال Shawwal - شهر رمضان Ramadan - عيد الفطر Eid Al-Fitr

Eid Mubarak عيد مبارك – Sham El-Nessim شم النسيم



Find out!

People in other countries mainly celebrate Eid Al-Fitr by spending time exchanging gifts and visiting friends and family. Eating sweets is also a common way of celebrating Eid Al-Fitr.

يحتفل الناس في البلدان الأخرى بعيد الفطر بشكل أساسي من خلال قضاء الوقت في تبادل الهدايا وزيارة الأصدقاء والعائلة. تناول الحلويات أيضًا طريقة شائعة للاحتفال بعيد الفطر.





2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt

عيد الفطر في مصر

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامي. الشهر الذي يسبق العيد هو شهر رمضان. يصوم الكثير من المسلمين نهارًا في رمضان. هذا يعني أنهم لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى الغروب.

في شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس في عام الماضي. يفكرون في الأشياء التي قاموا بعملها جيدًا والأشياء التي يريدون أن يقوموا بها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

When is Eid Al-Fitr?

متى يكون عيد الفطر؟

That's a very good question! It's different every year. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

هذا سؤال جيد جدًا إنه يختلف من سنة لأخرى. يصادف العيد اليوم الأول من شهر الإسلامي العاشر يسمى (شوال). يبدأ الشهر عندما يرى الناس الهلال.

Lots of kahk!

الكثير من الكحك!

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

الكحك هو بسكويت (كوكيز) لذيذ يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال. يحتوي الكحك على مكسرات وسكر وعسل. تصنع العديد من عائلات الكحك ولكن يمكنك شراؤه من المخبزة أيضًا.

"Eid Mubarak"

عيد مبارك

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

العيد هو وقت الاحتفال والسعادة. يقول الناس "عيد مبارك" لأصدقائهم. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We can buy kahk from the (mosque – club – bakery – park).
- 2 Muslims don't eat or drink until sunset in (Shawwa. – Eid – Ramadan – festivals).
- 3 Kahk are (happy – delicious – scared – sad) cookies.





3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Writing about a festival

للكتابه عن أى احتفال، استعن بالأسئلة الآتية:

Name of the festival: Sham El-Nessim

اسم العيد: شم النسيم

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter.

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال مصرى. إنه يأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح القبطى.



When is it?

It comes the day after Coptic Easter.

إنه يأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح.

What do people do?

ماذا يفعل الناس؟

People go to the parks and gardens with their families.

مع عائلاتهم.

Sham El-Nessim

شم النسيم

What do people eat?

ماذا يأكل الناس؟

People eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs.

السمك المالح والبصل والبيض الملون.

Why do you like it?

لماذا تحبه؟

I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family and we have a great time together.

أحب شم النسيم لأننى أقوم دائماً بالنزهات مع عائلتى ونقضى وقتاً ممتعاً معاً.

e.g. Write about a festival:

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. Children go to the parks and play. People go to the gardens with their families. They eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs. I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family and we have a great time together.



شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال مصرى. ويأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح القبطى. الأطفال يذهبون إلى الحدائق ويلعبون. يذهب الناس إلى الحدائق مع عائلتهم يأكلون السمك المالح والبصل والبيض الملون. أحب شم النسيم لأننى أقوم دائماً بالنزهات مع عائلتى ونقضى وقتاً ممتعاً معاً.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim
a) festival b) match c) birthday d) party
- 2 Muslims fast in
a) Shaaban b) Ragab c) Shawwal d) Ramadan
- 3 We eat to celebrate.
a) beans b) chocolate c) kahk d) mangoes
- 4 My mom makes kahk at the
a) bakery b) home c) school d) park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We my sister's birthday last week.
a) celebrated b) ate c) drunk d) read
الشرقية - إدارة مشغول 2024
- 2 "....." are delicious cookies.
a) Kahk b) Cake c) Yogurt d) Pizza
الجيزة - إدارة شمال الجيزة 2024
- 3 We can buy cookies and cakes from the
a) station b) hospital c) bakery d) library
القاهرة 2024
- 4 Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim
a) subject b) festival c) job d) game
القليوبية - إدارة قها 2024
- 5 To "....." means not to eat or drink until sunset.
a) celebrate b) fast c) play d) read
الإسكندرية - إدارة الإسكندرية 2024
- 6 We color boiled in Sham El-Nessim.
a) eggs b) apples c) fish d) oranges
دمياط 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunset – well – Ramadan – fast – Shawwal

القانونية - إدارة منها التعليمية 2024

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called (1)

In Ramadan, Muslims (2) during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until (3). In the month of Ramadan, people think about the things they did (4) and the things they want to do better. Ramadan is a time to help other people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

2023/2024 - 2024/2025

Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. It is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after the Coptic Easter. Every year, we color eggs and give them to our friends and family. At Sham El-Nessim last year, my little sister Mona colored six eggs for our grandparents. Later that day, we went to the park for a picnic. Mom and grandma made lots of delicious food. We had a great time.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sham El-Nessim is the Egyptian festival.
 a) newest b) oldest c) biggest d) smallest
- 2 We eggs at Sham El-Nessim.
 a) mix b) brush c) color d) wash

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How many eggs did Mona color?

.....

- 4 What did mom and grandma make?

.....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Sham El-Nessim"

- What is it?
- What do people do?
- What do people eat?

القبلي - 2024



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

great-grandma	والدة الجدة	birthday	عيد ميلاد
picnic	نزهة	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس

Extra vocabulary

writer	كاتب	special (adj.)	مميز	cousins	أولاد العم
aunt	عمة / خالة	uncle	عم / خال	huge (adj.)	ضخم
salad	سلطة	bread	خبز	countries	دول
Christmas	عيد الكريسماس	new life	حياة جديدة	lights	أضواء
games	ألعاب	colored balls	كرات ملونة	symbols	رموز

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	يزين
represent	يمثل	represented	يلعب
		play	played

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
come	يأتى	came	يضع
sing	يغنى	sang	يلقى (يرمى)
		put	put
		throw	threw

Expressions and Phrases

come together	يجمعون معًا	have a picnic	يقومون بنزهة	all afternoon	طوال فترة بعد الظهر
Happy Birthday	عيد ميلاد سعيد	have fun	يستمتع	decorate with	يزين بـ

Important sentences

- * Great-grandma's birthday party was two years ago. كان عيد ميلاد جدتي الكبرى منذ عامين.
- * All my family came together to celebrate. اجتمعت عائلتي بأكملها للاحتفال.
- * There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, and bread. كان هناك الكثير من الطعام: السلطة واللحوم والأسماك والخبز.
- * I played games with my cousins. We sang "Happy Birthday". لعبت ألعابًا مع أبناء عمومتى. غنينا أغنية "عيد ميلاد سعيد".
- * It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. كان يومًا مميزًا للغاية لأن جدتي الكبرى كانت سعيدة للغاية.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Great-grandma's birthday عيد ميلاد والدة الجدة

What was the special day?

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old!



Who went to the party?

All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit.

اجتمعت كل العائلة معًا لتحتفل. أتى كل أبناء عمي، عماتي وأعمامي. قمنا بعمل نزهة كبيرة في حديقة عمتي. كان يوجد الكثير من الطعام: سلطة، لحم، سمك، خبز، كيك (تورت)، بسكويت (كوكيز)، وفاكهة.



What did the writer eat and drink?

I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

What did the writer do?

I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

Why was it a special day?

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

سببًا خاصًا جدًا لأن والدة الجدة كانت سعيدة جدًا. لقد أحببت رؤية العائلة كلها. لقد كنا جميعًا سعداء.

Check

1 Why was it a special day?

SB

2 What song did they sing?

How to write about a special day

كيف تكتب عن يوم مميز

What was the special day?

ما هو اليوم المميز؟

Who was there?

من كان هناك؟

What did you eat?

ماذا أكلت؟

What did you drink?

ماذا شربت؟

What did you do?

ماذا فعلت؟

Why was it a special day?

لماذا كان هذا اليوم مميزاً؟

eg

Who was there?

What did you eat?

What was the special day?

One year ago, we had a very special party. My great grandpa was 80 years old!

All my family came together to celebrate. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and

I drank a bottle of orange juice. I played games with my cousins all afternoon.

We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma. It was a very special day

because our great-grandma was very happy.

What did you drink?

Why was it a special day?

What did you do?



In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the tree with lights, colored balls, and stars.

في العديد من البلدان، يزين الناس شجرة عيد الميلاد. هذه الشجرة تمثل حياة جديدة. يزين الناس الشجرة بالأضواء والكرات الملونة والنجوم.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 All my family came to _____ my great-grandma's birthday.

- a) spell b) allow c) celebrate d) play

2 I played _____ with my cousins all afternoon.

- a) foods b) games c) juice d) jobs

3 Last weekend, we _____ a picnic in my aunt's garden.

- a) ate b) drank c) had d) sang

4 Christmas trees have _____ balls and lights.

- a) dark b) colored c) bad d) fat

5 We _____ "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

- a) ate b) sang c) decorated d) celebrated

6 My great-grandma is my grandmother's _____.

- a) cousin b) sister c) mother d) aunt

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

games – picnic – celebrate – threw – sleep

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to _____ (1) _____. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge _____ (2) _____ in my aunt's garden. I played _____ (3) _____ with my cousins all afternoon. We ran and (4)..... a ball.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last week, it was my mother's birthday. All my family came to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. There was lots of food: salad, meat, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I played with my cousins. My brother Ali ate a big slice of chocolate cake. My sister drank a glass of orange juice. We sang "Happy birthday" to my mother. It was a special day. We were very happy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about “.....”.

- a) My father's birthday b) Our picnic
c) My mom's birthday d) A wedding party

2 My sister drank a glass of juice.

- a) apple b) banana c) orange d) mango

Answer the following questions:

3 When was the mother's birthday?

.....

4 Who ate a big slice of chocolate cake?

.....

4 Punctuate the following:

We had a huge picnic in my aunt s garden

.....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

“My special day”

الشرقية - الحبيشة 2024

- What is your special day?
- When is it?
- Why is it a special day?

.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

a packet of	عبوة من	milk	لبن
a bar of	قالب من	water	ماء
a carton of	علبة من	lemonade	عصير الليمون
a bottle of	زجاجة من	cake	كيك
a slice of	شريحة من	pizza	بيتزا
a piece of	قطعة من	meat	لحم
cookies	بسكويت	cheese	جبنة
candies	حلوى	bread	خبز
chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
soap	صابون	thirsty	عطشان

Lesson (2)

poem	قصيدة	beach	شاطئ
octopus	أخطبوط	Damietta	دمياط
dish	طبق / وجبة	meal	وجبة
trip	رحلة قصيرة	photos	صور
deep	عميق	video	فيديو
frozen	مجمد	healthy	صحي
lovely	جميل	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
dessert	تحلية	instead of	بدلاً من

Lesson (3)

sunset	غروب الشمس	festival	مهرجان / عيد
kahk	كحك	Muslim	مسلم
mosque	مسجد	Eid	العيد
festival	مهرجان	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
different	مختلف	Islamic month	شهر إسلامي (هجري)
before	قبل	Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك / عيد سعيد
delicious	لذيذ	Sham El-Nessim	عيد شم النسيم
honey	عسل	Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي
bakery	مخبز	celebration	احتفال
colored	ملون	Ramadan	شهر رمضان
picnic	درهه	Shawwal	شهر شوال

Lessons (4 & 5)

birthday	عيد ميلاد	colored balls	كرات ملونة
special	مميز	stars	نجوم
uncle	عم / خال	symbols	رموز
huge	ضخم	Christmas	عيد الكريسماس
lights	أضواء	great-grandma	والدة الجدة
cousins	أولاد العم	picnic	نزهة
salad	سلطة	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس
countries	دول	new life	حياة جديدة

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs

Conjugation of verbs تعريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	go	went
swim	swam	forget	forgot
eat	ate	cut	cut
sing	sang	come	came
catch	caught	say	said
buy	bought	run	ran
fly	flew	have	had
hear	heard	make	made
give	gave	am/is	was
write	wrote	are	were
throw	threw	drink	drank
feel	felt		

Unit 8

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....	زجاجة مياه	.....	قالب شكولاتة
.....	عبوة بسكويت (كوكيز)	.....	قطعة جبنة
.....	شريحة كيك	.....	علبة عصير
.....	طعام	.....	فطيع
.....	عطشان	.....	حفلة

Lesson 2

.....	قنديل البحر	.....	أخطبوط
.....	صور	.....	زبادي
.....	رحلة قصيرة	.....	مجمد
.....	تحلية	.....	صحي

Lesson 3

.....	مسجد	.....	كعك
.....	غروب الشمس	.....	احتفال
.....	مهرجان	.....	مخبز
.....	شهر رمضان	.....	عسل

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	عيد ميلاد	.....	نزهة
.....	شجرة الكريسماس	.....	والدة الجدة
.....	مميز	.....	ضخم
.....	عمة/ خالة	.....	أولاد العم
.....	خبز	.....	عم / خال
.....	رموز	.....	سلطة
.....	ملون	.....	أضواء
.....	يزين	.....	حياة جديدة

WRITING TIME

تجميعة لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Eid Al-Fitr:

- 1 What is Eid Al-Fitr?
- 2 When is it?
- 3 How do people celebrate it?
- 4 What do people do in it?

Eid Al-Fitr

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.
Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal.
People eat kahk to celebrate. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families.

How to write about a festival or celebration:

- 1 What is the festival?
- 2 When is the festival?
- 3 How do people celebrate it?

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. People go to the parks with their families to celebrate it. They eat salted fish and colored eggs, too.

How to write about a special day:

- 1 Yesterday/ Last week was + اسم مناسبة.
- 2 My whole family / friends came to celebrate.
- 3 I had + محدد كمية ونوع الأكل.
- 4 I / We + نشاط في الماضي.
- 5 It was a day to remember.

"A special day"

Yesterday was my grandma's birthday party. My whole family came to celebrate. I had two slices of the birthday cake and a carton of juice. We played games and sang many songs. It was a day to remember.



يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت نكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and write:

1



.....

2



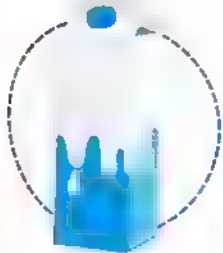
.....

3



.....

4



.....

5



.....

6



.....

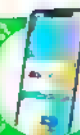
2 Write past simple form of these verbs:

see	.....	sing	.....
make	.....	is	.....
swim	.....	have	.....
eat	.....	feel	.....
go	.....	catch	.....

3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb:

ate – sang – saw – swam – made – went

- I a great movie last night.
- I a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar. It tasted horrible.
- I had my swimming test yesterday, I 50 meters!
- I too much candy. I feel sick.
- I to the beach last year. It was fun!
- We all a song in class today.



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of
a) winter b) spring c) summer d) winter
- We can play in the
a) schools b) farms c) parks d) libraries
- We can eat
a) meat b) kahk c) fish d) pizza
- Sham El-Nessim is a festival for
a) French b) Americans c) Egyptians d) Italians



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- Karim drank a of water.
a) piece b) bar c) bottle d) slice
- Which is your favorite? B: Eid Al-Fitr.
a) game b) festival c) subject d) music

القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024

القاهرة - إدارة سور مدينة نصر 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

milk – fish – play – festival – colored

سيوط - إدارة البحري 2024

I like to celebrate Sham El-Nessim. It's an Egyptian (1) . During Sham El-Nessim, people eat salted (2) , onions, and (3) eggs. Children go to the parks to (4) . We have a great time together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Ramadan is a very important month for Muslims. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until the sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It's also a time to help other people. Eid Al-Fitr is on the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ramadan is a very important for Muslims.
a) year b) month c) day d) week
- 2 Ramadan is time to others.
a) help b) eat c) drink d) catch

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do Muslims do during the day of Ramadan?
- 4 When is Eid Al-Fitr?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 Hala (see) some animals yesterday.
- 2 I want two (bottles) of cake, please.
- 3 Where did Aya (went) last year?
- 4 She (doesn't) buy a new dress last week

لشركة - إدارة مشعل 2024

القاهرة - الوثائق 2024

القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

ألكندرية 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2



eid is the time of celebration

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Eid Al-Fitr"

- When is Eid Al-Fitr?
- How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?
- What do we eat in Eid Al-Fitr?

كتاب
صفحة
255

بورسعيد - إدارة التحرير 2024

Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 - 64%

Practice more

65 - 84%

Self-practice

85 - 100%

Well done!

70



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 years ago, we had a very special party.

(Two – Five – Three)

2 All my family came together to

(decorate – celebrate – study)

3 We had a huge picnic in our aun'ts

(kitchen – garden – balcony)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

all – packet – many – bar

Wael : How cookies did you eat?

Reem : A of cookies.

Wael : Is that ?

Reem : Maybe a of chocolate, only a small one.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 May I have a (slice – bottle – piece) of lemonade, please?

2 We had ice cream for (dessert – dish – desert).

3 Kahk are delicious cookies with nuts and (salted fish – eggs – honey) in them.

4 (Do – Does – Did) you have a good time yesterday with your friends, Hana?

5 Sara looked a bit green. She didn't (feel – feels – felt) well.



Learning Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
 - read about party games.
 - listen about some unusual festivals around the world.
 - practice more irregular past simple verb forms.
 - practice the pronunciation of **oo** and **ee** words.
 - explore how to present information.
 - write an invitation.
 - work in groups to organize a class celebration.

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

يقرأ عن الألعاب الجماعية،

يسمع إلى بعض المهرجانات الغريبة حول العالم

يتدرب على استخدام المزيد من الأفعال غير المنتظمة في زمن الماضي

يتدرب على نطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على **oo** و **ee**.

• تكتشف كيفية تقديم المعلومات،

• تكتب دعوة

يعمل في مجموعات لتنظيم احتفال صغي

Did you know?

Ful medames is a very old dish. * **Archaeologists** found some Ful Medames in one of the Pyramids! It was thousands of years ago.

* **Archaeologists**

علماء الآثار

Find out!

My mom and dad remember many celebrations they had when they were children. They remember Eid Al-Fitr, Eid Al-Adha, and the * **monetary gifts** they had then.

* **monetary gifts**

العينية



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

Traditional party games:

ألعاب جماعية تقليدية:



Pass the parcel
لعبة نقل الطرود



Musical chairs
لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية



Hide and seek
لعبة الغمضة



play games
يلعب الألعاب



give presents
يعطى الهدايا



open presents
يفتح الهدايا



wrap presents
يغلف الهدايا



play music
تشغل الموسيقى

Extra vocabulary

wedding	زفاف	children	أطفال	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
paper	ورق	circle	دائرة	person	شخص
ready (adj.)	جاهز	without	بدون	popular (adj.)	مشهور / محبوب
wide (adj.)	واسع	seeker	الباحث	the last	الأخير
winner	فائز	outside	خارجاً	team	فريق



When we play together, we learn to:

عندما نلعب معاً، نتعلم أن:

have fun

نستمتع

help others

نساعد الآخرين

respect rules

نحترم القواعد

listen to others

نستمع إلى الآخرين

Conjugation of verbs نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	love يحب	loved	wrap يغلف	wrapped
cover يغطي	covered	stop يتوقف	stopped	unwrap يفتح	unwrapped
join ينضم	joined	close يغلق	closed	count يعد	counted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
sit يجلس	sat	give يعطي	gave	become يصبح	became
keep يحتفظ بـ...	kept	put يضع	put	hold يمسك	held
seek يبحث	sought	find يجد	found	hide يختبئ	hid

Expressions and Phrases

get together يجتمعون معًا	around the world حول العالم	more fun أكثر متعة
lots of الكثير من	take off ينزع	put out يضع
run around يجري حول	take away يستبعد	the last one left الشخص الأخير المتبقى

Let's say it right!

▶ لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما في (traditional).

▶ لاحظ أن حرف الـ (w) صامت لا يُنطق في كلمة (wrap).

Take care!

- الكلمات الإنجليزية لها معانٍ مختلفة حسب النص:

e.g. play games يلعب الألعاب

play music يشغل الموسيقى

- يمكننا الحصول على عكس بعض الكلمات عن طريق إضافة البادئة (un):

e.g. wrap يغلف → unwrap يفتح

- نستخدم اللاحقة (er) لنوضح الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل.

e.g. seek يبحث → seeker محب

win يفوز → winner فائز

play لعب → player لاعب

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Musical (presents – parcels – chairs – weddings) is my favorite party game.
- 2 It's not good to (open – play – wrap – pass) music so loudly.
- 3 You need to (wrap – stop – open – play) the present in paper before you give it to her.
- 4 When we play in a (chair – team – circle – parcel), we help others.

Party games ألعاب جماعية



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

هذه بعض الألعاب التقليدية التي يلعبها الناس حول العالم

Pass the parcel نقل الطرود

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents.

كلنا نحب إعطاء الهدايا، كما أن فتح الهدايا أمر أكثر متعة.

How to play: كيفية اللعب:

Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle.

Play some music. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى.

Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.



قم بلف هدية صغيرة وغطها بالكثير والكثير من الأوراق. يجلس اللاعبون في دائرة.

ورقة واحدة عنها. اللاعب الذي يتمكن من فتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.

Musical chairs الكراسي الموسيقية

Run but be ready to sit! اجري ولكن كن مستعدًا للجلوس!

How to play: كيفية اللعب:

Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Play some music.

Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down.

The player without the chair is "out". Take away one chair and play again.



ضع بعض الكراسي إذا كان لديك 6 لاعبين، فأنت تحتاج فقط 5 كراسي. اعمل بعض الموسيقى. اطلب من اللاعبين أن يمشوا حول الكراسي. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يجلس الجميع. اللاعب الذي لا يجلس هو "خارج". أزل كرسيًا واحدًا وادعهم يلعبون مرة أخرى.

Hide and seek الغمضة

This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

هذه لعبة قديمة جدًا ومشهورة. يستطيع العديد من اللاعبين الانضمام إلى هذه اللعبة الشيقة.



How to play: كيفية اللعب

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten.

The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them.

The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

يقوم لاعب ويسمى (الباحث) بإغلاق عينيه واعد إلى عشرة يقوم باقي اللاعبين بالاختباء. يحاول الباحث إيجادهم أو لاعب يجده الباحث يصبح الباحث التالي. الشخص الأخير المتبقى هو الفائز.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- * When children get together, they play party games. عندما يجتمع الأطفال معًا فإنهم يلعبون ألعابًا جماعية.
- * In "Pass the parcel", the player who unwraps the present keeps it. في لعبة نقل الطرود، اللاعب الذي يفتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.
- * In "Musical chairs", the player without a chair is "out". في لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية اللاعب الذي يبقى بدون كرسي يكون خارج اللعبة.
- * Hide and seek is a very old and popular game. تعتبر لعبة الغمضة لعبة قديمة ومحبوبة جدًا.
- * In "Hide and seek", one player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and tries to find the other players. في لعبة "الغمضة"، يغلق أحد اللاعبين، ويُدعى الباحث، عينيه ويحاول العثور على اللاعبين الآخرين.



Pass the parcel

You need people.

You need presents.

You need music.

Musical chairs

You need people. You need music. You need to run.

The player without a chair is out.

Hide and seek

You need people. You need to cover your eyes and play it. It's better to play it outside. You need to run.

Practice



Lesson 1



Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- To play _____, you need a present, music, and lots of paper.
a) Pass the parcel b) Musical chairs
c) Hide and seek d) football
- _____ a small present with lots of paper.
a) Unwrap b) Play c) Wrap d) Pass
- The players sit in a _____.
a) line b) circle c) triangle d) square
- Pass the present as the _____ plays.
a) toys b) music c) chairs d) papers



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hide and seek is a _____ game. All the children know it. لقاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) strange b) cold c) popular d) bad
- He won the game. He's the _____. أسبوط - إدارة ديروط 2024
a) winner b) parcel c) loser d) present
- In "Musical chairs," the player without the chair is "_____". أسبوط - إدارة العايم 2024
a) next b) inside c) behind d) out
- In Hide and seek, all you need is a _____ place to play it. بني سويف - بنى سويف 2024
a) small b) tiny c) high d) wide
- We can play _____ at the party. البحيرة - البدرشين 2024
a) games b) class c) tree d) window
- We must respect the _____ when we play. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) rides b) roles c) rules d) ropes
- We need music to play _____. بورسعيد 2024
a) football b) Hide and seek c) Musical chairs d) tennis
- My friend gives me a _____ on my birthday. الإسكندرية - المنيرة 2014
a) present b) language c) homework d) race



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

seven – sits – run – chairs – six

البحر الأحمر - الفردقة 2024

I love to play party games like "Musical Chairs". To play it, we need(1)..... and music. If you have seven players, you only need(2)..... chairs. Players(3)..... around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone(4)..... down. The player without a chair is "out".

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I am Waleed. I love party games. I like playing games with my friends and with my family. My friend Sami likes to play Pass the parcel game. In pass the parcel, the winner takes the present. My favorite game is the Musical chairs. It's exciting. I like to play it with my friends. I play it in the garden at home. If we are six players, we put five chairs. I like to sit down quickly to win.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Waleed loves games.
a) birthday b) party c) bad d) group
- 2 The Musical chairs is
a) exciting b) bad c) not fun d) boring

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who likes to play Pass the parcel?

- 4 What does the winner take?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 hide and seek is a very old game

سي سويغ - إدارة ناصر 2024

- 2 the players sit in a circle

القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Hide and seek"

- What do you need to play it?
- How do you play this game?
- Who is the winner in this game?

مخاطب
صفحة
255

القاهرة - اشرية 2024



Reading



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

Cheese rolling	دحرجة الجبن	Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية
Chinese New Year	عيد رأس السنة الصينية	La Tomatina	مهرجان الطماطم

Extra vocabulary

festival	احتفال / عيد	travels	سفريات / رحلات	weird (adj.)	غريب
wonderful (adj.)	رائع	traditions	تقاليد	UK (United Kingdom)	المملكة المتحدة
round (adj.)	مستدير	hill	تل / هضبة	funny (adj.)	مضحك
strange (adj.)	غريب	Asia	آسيا	celebration	احتفال
envelope	ظرف	way	وسيلة / طريقة	good luck	حظ سعيد
amount	كمية / مقدار	even number	رقم زوجي	Spain	إسبانيا
messy (adj.)	فوضوي	few (adj.)	قليل (العدد)	India	الهند
monsters	وحوش	colorful (adj.)	ملون	silly (adj.)	سخيف / عبي
smiling faces	وجوه ضاحكة	mud	طين	dragon	تنين
yuan	يوان (عملة صينية)	alive (adj.)	حي (على قيد الحياة)	string	حبل / حبل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
push يدفع	pushed	happen يحدث	happened
pull يسحب	pulled	wish يتمنى	wished

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
bring يحضر	brought	understand يفهم	understood
run يجري	ran	wear يرتدي	wore
fall يقع	fell	hurt يؤذي / يجرح	hurt
throw يقذف	threw	fly يطير	flew

Expressions and Phrases

the rest of the world بقية العالم	each other بعضهم البعض	look back at يلقى نظرة على
run after يطارد	look a bit dangerous تبدو خطيرة بعض الشيء	at the end في النهاية
(be) covered in مغطى بـ	for fun من أجل المتعة	all over the world في جميع أنحاء العالم
full of مليء بـ	a few examples of بعض الأمثلة على	stop laughing يتوقف عن الضحك
make a mess يصنع فوضى	take a shower يستحم	take part in يشارك في



Let's say it right!

▶ لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (si) ينطقان /3/ (ج) كما في (Asia).

▶ لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ck) ينطقان /k/ (ك) كما في (luck).

Take care!

تشير الأرقام الترتيبية إلى ترتيب شيء ما بالنسبة للأرقام الأخرى.

أسماء البلاد والمهرجانات تبدأ بحروف كبيرة.

eg. This is the **fourth** festival.

eg. China, Spain, Asia, India

La Tomatina, Kite festival



Choose the correct answer:

- I played a lot of games yesterday. It was a (terrible – horrible – wonderful – bad) day.
- Everything in his room wasn't in the right place. His room was (alive – messy – wonderful – good).
- Don't go inside the house. Your shoes are covered in (string – mud – fun – luck).
- He always makes us smile. He is (angry – sad – funny – weird).

Different festivals احتفالات مختلفة

2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together. This week I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

اسمى دينا ووظيفتي إخباركم عن رحلاتي وأتحدث عن العادات والتقاليد المختلفة التي رأيتها خلال رحلاتي. العالم مكان كبير وجميل. كلما تعلمنا أكثر عن بلدان أخرى، يمكننا أن نفهم بعضها بعضاً ونعيش معاً. هذه الأسبوع أعود لأتحدث عن بعض العادات والتقاليد الغريبة والرائعة التي رأيتها خلال رحلاتي.

Cheese rolling مهرجان دحرجة الجبن

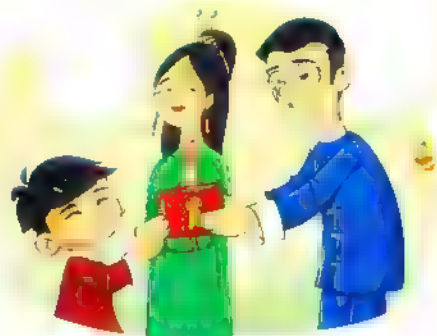
Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell but nobody was hurt.



لنبدأ بهذا المهرجان في بريطانيا. إنه من أغرب الأشياء التي رأيته. انظروا، كانوا يدفعون الجبن الدائري أسفل التل وكمية كبيرة من الناس تهرعون خلفه. لماذا يفعلون ذلك؟ الشخص الذي يفوز بالسباق، يفوز بالجبن. كان الأمر مضحكاً (وغير عادي جداً)، لكنه بدا خطيراً إلى حد ما. سقط الكثير من الناس ولكن لم يصب أحد.

Chinese New Year العام الصيني الجديد

The next one was in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes. I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like, 2,4,6,8, etc.) because they said this was good luck.



المهرجان التالي كان في الصين وأجزاء كثيرة من آسيا. الناس في حفلات الزفاف والاحتفالات أعطوا الأطفال والشباب مظاريف حمراء. سألت صديقتي عن هذا وأخبرتني أن هناك قوفاً داخل المظاريف وأن هذه طريقةهم في إرسال تحية سعيدة. عادةً ما يكون مبلغ المال رقم زوجي على نهاية مثل 2، 4، 6، 8، إلخ. لأنهم قالوا إن هذا كان حظاً سعيداً.

La Tomatina مهرجان الطماطم

I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy! Everybody threw old tomatoes at each other. I couldn't see anything. After a few minutes, everyone was covered in red tomatoes! Why do they throw old tomatoes? For fun!



لقد ستمتعت كثيرًا هنا ، وكان يسمى La Tomatina وكان في إسبانيا. لقد كان قوسوً حذاً ! ألقى ، جميع الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض. لم أستطع رؤية أى شيء بعد بضع دقائق كان لجميع معطى بصفاصم احمرءاء لمداء يرمون الطماطم القديمة؟ للمتعة!

Kite festival مهرجان الطائرات الورقية

This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, monsters... I tried to fly one of the kites, it was very difficult! Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly, in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.



هذا هو الرابع. كان مهرجان طائرات ورقية فيه حسيلاً يحدث هذا في جميع أنحاء العالم، ولكن هذا كان في الهند. مئات من الناس صعدوا وكذا، صررو، طائراتهم، ورقية، كانت، سمك، سمك حيوات، سمك، وحوش حوسا أن، أصبح حدى انطرن الورقية، كان الأمر صعباً للغاية!

حسناً، هذه مجرد أمثلة قليلة من 'مهرجانات' التي رأيتها خلال رحلتي. رأيت أشخاص يرتدون ملابس ملونة، ويأكلون طعاماً لذيذاً، ويقومون ببعض الأشياء السخيفة، في كل هذه 'مهرجانات' أبت لكثير من بوجوه المستمتعة السعيدة

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 They give the children red (kite – envelope – dragon – festival) and wish them good luck.
- 2 People throw tomatoes in (Cheese rolling – summer – Chinese – La Tomatina) festival.
- 3 The person who won the race, won the (potato – tomato – cheese – yogurt).
- 4 He tried to fly one of the (cheese – race – envelope – kites), but it was difficult!



Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1) Regular verbs:

الأفعال المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) + الفعل في المصدر (ed/d/ied) ...



We **celebrated** Ahmed's birthday **yesterday**.

2) Irregular verbs:

الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...



I **won** the race **last** year.

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجرى	ran	fall	يسقط	fell
win	يفوز	won	fly	يطير	flew	give	يعطى	gave
tell	يخبر	told	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقى (يرمى)	threw	wear	يردى	wore	buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made	forget	ينسى	forgot	go	يذهب	went
come	يأتى	came	write	يكتب	wrote	bring	يحمل/ يحضر	brought



e.g. ate – eight / read – red / won – one

بعض الأفعال في التصريف الثاني تشابه في النطق مع كلمات أخرى:

Choose the correct answer:

- I (find – found – finding – finds) this key yesterday.
- They (drinking – drank – drinks – drink) 3 cups of coffee last night.
- She (see – saw – won – sees) Sara last week.
- My dad (tell – tells – told – took) me a story in the past.
- Did you (bring – brings – bringing – brought) your book?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 It isn't easy to a kite. أسبوط - إدارة القوسية 2024
 a) run b) throw c) fly d) wear
- 2 He gave me a red envelope me good luck. المحيطة - إدارة الهرم 2024
 a) playing b) wishing c) wearing d) reading
- 3 She is very Her books are all over the ground.
 a) messy b) wonderful c) inside d) alive
- 4 He is He makes us laugh.
 a) delicious b) strange c) funny d) messy
- 5 The police officer ran the thief.
 a) on b) in c) after d) under
- 6 I didn't climb that tree. It looked a bit
 a) green b) dangerous c) funny d) wonderful
- 7 We won the competition that we took in.
 a) part b) game c) back d) fun
- 8 Anything has the shape of a circle is
 a) triangle b) square c) cube d) round

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة المحمي السبعة 2024

after – push – rolling – race – festivals

There are many wonderful (1) that I saw during my travels. The most interesting one was the Cheese (2) festival. It takes place in the UK. People (3) the round cheese down the hill. Hundreds of people run (4) it. The person who wins the race, wins the cheese.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The world is a big, beautiful place. People celebrate different festivals around the world. The Chinese New Year festival is a wonderful festival in China. People give the children and the young people red envelopes. There's usually money inside them. It's the Chinese way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually has an even number at the end because they say it brings good luck, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about festival.
- a) Cheese rolling b) Chinese New Year
c) La Tomatina d) Kite
- 2** The amount of money usually has a/an number at the end.
- a) odd b) even c) zero d) decimal

Answer the following questions:

- ### 3 How do Chinese people celebrate Chinese New Year?

- #### 4 What is usually inside the envelopes?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My sister (writes) a nice paragraph yesterday.
- 2 What (do) you do last week?
- 3 I didn't (wore) a jacket because it was hot yesterday.
- 4 My dad (comes) back late last night.
- 5 My friend (bring) me some water to drink.
- 6 Hagar (buy) a new dress last Monday.
- 7 I (go) to school early this morning.
- 8 He didn't (threw) the ball to me.
- 9 What subject (do) you study yesterday?
- 10 I (play) football with my friends last Friday.
- 11 Two years ago, we (have) a very special party.
- 12 She was happy because she (win) the match last week.
- 13 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We (was) h
- 14 I (fall) over and my friend helped me.
- 15 We (eat) a big cake yesterday.
- 16 We (see) a show yesterday.

الاسماعيلية 2024

المختبر لاجمير د. ر. المردققي 2024

الثامنة - دورة لسلام 2024

مناقشة دورة السلام 2024

الفاصل 2024

۲۰۱۴ میں

الحبر: 2024

الطبعة: ٢٠٢٤

Punctuate the following:

- 1 it was funny, but it looked a bit dangerous
- 2 I couldn't see anything
- 3 why do they throw old tomatoes
- 4 i saw lots of happy smiling faces



Citizenship المواطنة

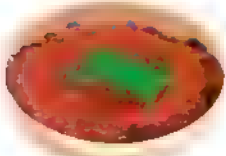


1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



Ful Medames فول مدمس



Basbousa بسبوسة



karate كاراتيه

Extra vocabulary

special (adj.)	مميز	country	دولة / بلد	history	تاريخ
rich (adj.)	غني	culture	ثقافة	proud (adj.)	فخور
ideas	أفكار	wonderful (adj.)	رائع	beans	فول
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	garlic	ثوم	sweet (adj.)	حلو (مسكر)
semolina	دقيق السميد	syrup	شراب السكر	age	سن / عمر
energy	طاقة	helpful (adj.)	متعاون	friendly (adj.)	ودود
visitors	زوار	hospitable (adj.)	مضياف	nature	طبيعة
desert	صحراء	south	جنوب	east	شرق
Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	mountains	جبال	authors	مؤلفون
prizes	جوائز	salty (adj.)	مملح	national (adj.)	وطني

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
continue	يستمر	celebrate	يحتفل
cook	يطبخ	snow	يغطي بالثلج

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think	يفكر / يعتقد	win	يفوز
	thought		won

Expressions and Phrases

famous for	مشهور بـ ...	proud of	فخور بـ	(be) described with	يوصف بـ ...
served with	يقدم مع	more than half	أكثر من النصف	under the age of	تحت سن
full of energy	مليء بالطاقة	make movies	يصنع الأفلام	participate in	يشارك في

What makes us special? ما الذي يجعلنا مميزين؟



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country.

نحن نحتفل كثيرًا بأشياء في تاريخ بلادنا. بلد مثل مصر مشهور بتاريخه الغني، ويجب علينا أن نفتخر ببلدنا الجميلة.

Here are some ideas: يوجد بعض الأفكار:

The food: الطعام:

Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.

Maybe you want something sweet? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.



يمكن وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رائع!

أليس هذا رائعًا؟ يمكن وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رائع! من الحلويات، ماذا عن البسبوسة؟ كعكة رقيقة من السميد مع شراب السكر.

The people: الناس:

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.



أكثر من نصف عدد المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. وهذا يعني أننا مليئون بالطاقة. نحن نساعد بعضنا بعضًا، كما أننا ودودون جدًا مع الزائرين. نحن شعب مضياف.

Nature: الطبيعة

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands.

Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.



يعتقد العديد من الناس أن مصر صحراء فقط. صحيح أن حوالي 90% من مصر صحراء ولكن ندياً أيضاً أرض صحراء. بالقرب من النيل الأراضي صحراء جميلة. هناك جبال في الجنوب والشرق وتُمطر جليداً أحياناً في منطقة سيناء.

Culture: الثقافة

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous.

We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.



نحن نقوم بصناعة الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور. كما أن لدينا مؤلفين فازوا بجوائز هامة ونستطيع نحن نحن نحن الرياضة. أي شخص يحب الكاراتيه يعرف اسم واحدة من أشهر لاعبي الكاراتيه (فيريال عبد العزيز).

Definitions

special	having something different or that nobody else has	امتلاك شيء مختلف أو شيء لا يمتلكه أي شخص آخر
hospitable	friendly and welcoming to visitors	ودود وكريم مع الزوار
serve	give food or drink to people	أن تعطى الطعام أو الشراب للناس
celebrate	to feel proud of	أن تشعر بالفخر
region	a part of a country	جزء من بلد
authors	people who write movies and stories	الأشخاص الذين يكتبون الأفلام والقصص

Check**Choose the correct answer:**

- 1 Egypt is famous for its (building jobs – cities – history).
- 2 Ful Medames is (wrote drank – served – played) with lots of olive oil and garlic.
- 3 Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with (syrup – water – juice – cola).
- 4 It even (shines rains – wins – snows) in the Sinai region.



Language Focus

Making adjectives تكوين الصفات

Example

We can make an adjective by adding (-ful) to the end of a verb or noun.

يمكن تكوين الصفة بإضافة اللاحقة (-ful) إلى نهاية الاسم أو الفعل.

noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care → careful

pain → painful

help → helpful

wonder → wonderful

use → useful

color → colorful

beauty → beautiful

جميل



I hurt my arm. It is painful.

لقد جرحت ذراعي، إنه مؤلم.



Ahmed is helpful.

أحمد متعاون.



When a noun ends in (y), replace it with (i) when adding (-ful).

عندما ينتهي الاسم بحرف (y)، استبدل حرف (y) بـ (i) عند إضافة (-ful).

e.g: beauty الجمال → beautiful جميل

Choose the correct answer:

1 Dalia's dress is very (useful – careful – helpful – beautiful). We all love it.

2 The food in Egypt is (bad – awful – terrible – wonderful).

3 She bought a (useful – painful – colorful – helpful) dress! It has many colors.

4 Mona helps many people. She is really (painful – careful – useful – helpful).

5 I hurt my leg. It is (good – nice – high – painful).

6 Try to be (painful – colorful – useful – careful) when you carry heavy things.

الشرقية 2024



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 Many people think that Egypt is only a
 a) school b) city c) desert d) village
 (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 Near the Nile, it is and beautiful.
 a) green b) black c) blue d) red
- 3 There are in the south and east.
 a) seas b) mountains c) clouds d) rivers
- 4 It even snows in the region.
 a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Aswan d) Sinai

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I'm; I have a lot of money.
 a) hungry b) sad c) poor d) rich
 الفيوم 2024
- 2 Egyptian people are and friendly to visitors.
 a) unhelpful b) hospitable c) painful d) bad
 دسابط 2024
- 3 Basbousa is a very dessert.
 a) sweet b) salty c) cold d) hot
 القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
- 4 I have for breakfast.
 a) pens b) toy c) Ful Medames d) books
 الشرقية 2024
- 5 Egypt is very for its history.
 a) bad b) good c) famous d) proud
 القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 6 A/An writes movies and stories.
 a) player b) author c) visitor d) Egyptian
- 7 We should be of our beautiful country.
 a) plane b) pain c) cloud d) proud
 القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 8 I am very when I go online.
 a) careful b) beautiful c) painful d) useful
 القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

serve – delicious – unhealthy – Medames – beans

الدقهلية 2024

Egypt is famous for its rich culture and delicious dishes. Ful (1) is a famous Egyptian dish. Egyptian people ate it thousands of years ago. It's (2) cooked slowly. You can (3) it with olive oil and garlic. It's very (4)

Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for its history. We should feel proud of our country. We should celebrate its rich culture. Egyptian people are friendly and helpful. There are many good places to visit in Egypt. In Egypt, we celebrate many festivals. Eid Al-Fitr is one of these festivals. It comes after the month of Ramadan. People bake kahk in Eid Al-Fitr. Kahk is delicious cookies.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Egypt is famous for its
a) celebrate b) festivals c) movies d) history
- Egyptian people are
a) young b) old c) friendly d) bad

Answer the following questions:

- What is kahk?
.....
- When does Eid Al-Fitr come?
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

- She has a (color) dress. القيوم إدارة إيطسا 2024
- Tamer helps his mom. He is (helping). بورسعيد 2024
- Egypt is a (wonder) country. البحيرة 2024
- Can you (helpful) me, please? لقلبيوية - إدارة العبور 2024
- Milk and cheese are very (use) for your teeth. بي سريف إدارة اهناسا 2024
- Some computer games can be (help). لحيرة 2024
- Be (care) on the road. البريرة 2024
- Alia's dress is (wonder). We all love it! لشرقية إدارة بنس 2024
- This fruit is a (use) food. بي سريف 2024
- I have a toothache. It's (pain). لدفيلية إدارة بلقاس 2024
- I have some (beauty) flowers. الحيرة 2024
- I am very (care) when I go online. لشرقية 2024
- There are many (color) flowers in the garden. الشاهرة 2024
- The boat trip was (wonder). اسعد إدارة ميتلوط 2024
- My teacher is very (help). الحيرة إدارة أبو السمري 2024

Punctuate the following:

- Many people think that egypt is only a desert
.....
- Maryam s dress is beautiful
.....
- what's the most famous food in Egypt
.....
- egyptians are known for their culture and friendly smiles
.....



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد	information	معلومات
invitation	دعوة	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary

missing (adj.)	مفقود	road	طريق
dear (adj.)	عزيزي	whole	كل
party games	الألعاب الجماعية	library	مكتبة
guests	ضيوف	class celebration	احتفال صفي
sports day	يوم رياضي	school yard	ساحة المدرسة
T-shirt	تيشرت	shorts	شورت

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
imagine يتخيل	imagined	invite يدعو	invited
remember يتذكر	remembered	hope يأمل	hoped
decorate يزين	decorated	prepare يجهز	prepared

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
come يأتي	came	have يملك	had
wear يرتدي	wore	bring يحضر	brought

Expressions and Phrases

make a list	يعد قائمة	RSVP	من فضلك أرسل ردًا
see you then	أراك لاحقًا	have a party	يقيم حفلة
something blue	شيء ما باللون الأزرق	It'll be fun!	سيكون الأمر ممتعًا!
agree on	يتفق على	Be ready to	كن مستعدًا لـ...
lots of	الكثير من	have fun	يستمتع



Writing

انظر واقرأ:

2. Look and read:

Dear _____

I'm having a _____ party next Thursday at my house. Can you come? I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play Musical chairs.

When: Thursday, August 12th

What time? 3 pm – 5 pm

Where: 12 Dene Road (my house!)
(next to the library)

What to wear? Something blue

RSVP: 9768 324 590

I hope you can come.



Why are you having the party? لماذا تقيم الحفلة؟

e.g. (birthday party - wedding party - class party - festival)

Where is the party? أين الحفلة؟

e.g. 12 Dene Road (my house!) (next to the library)

When is the party? متى الحفلة؟

e.g. Thursday, August 12th / 3 pm – 5 pm

Do you want guests to bring anything?

هل تريد من الضيوف إحضار أي شيء؟

e.g. Bring some music so we can play Musical chairs.

Do you want to know how many people are coming?

هل تريد أن تعرف عدد الأشخاص القادمين؟

e.g. RSVP: 9768 324 590

How to write an invitation

كيفية كتابة دعوة

Find out!

RSVP is taken from the French phrase *Répondez s'il vous plait* and it means "Please respond" to confirm an invitation. It is a formal language.

مأخوذة من عبارة فرنسية تعني، يرجى الرد، «R. P. S.» تأكيد دعوة وهي لغة رسمية.





Project



3. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Prepare for a class celebration خطط لاحتفال الصف

1. What are you celebrating? ما الذى تحتفل به؟	2. What food and drink do you want? ما هو الطعام والشراب الذى تريده؟	3. What games do you want to play? ما هى الألعاب التى تريد أن تلعبها؟	4. Who is going to prepare the food? من الذى سيقوم بإعداد الطعام؟	5. What do you want guests to wear? ماذا تريد أن يرتديه الضيوف؟
---	--	---	--	--

e.g.

What do you want guests to wear?

What are you celebrating?

Our Class's Sports Day

Where: In the school yard

When: Tuesday, 10 am – 11 am

What to wear: T-shirt and shorts

Please bring: Water and lots of cake!

Be ready to: play lots of games, have fun, and eat lots of cake!



What food and drink do you want?

What games do you want to play?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mazen sent me a/an _____ to his birthday party. الإسكندرية 2024
 a) invitation b) transportation c) celebration d) decoration
- 2 A lot of _____ came to my birthday party and gave me presents.
 a) guests b) money c) animals d) food
- 3 We wear T-shirts and _____ when we play football.
 a) dress b) shorts c) glasses d) hats
- 4 My book is _____. I can't find it.
 a) miss b) invitation c) missing d) information
- 5 When they have a celebration, they _____ their class.
 a) think b) imagine c) decorate d) wear
- 6 She made a/an _____ of what she needed.
 a) list b) guest c) celebration d) address
- 7 Remember to _____ an orange hat at the party.
 a) eat b) where c) drink d) wear
- 8 A: What _____ is your party? B: At 5 pm.
 a) day b) time c) food d) clothes
- 9 I always play with my friends in the school _____.
 a) class b) library c) office d) yard
- 10 I'm inviting the _____ class to my birthday party. الجيزة 2024
 a) role b) hole c) whole d) hall

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

party – road – celebrate – chairs – inviting

Dear Nadia,

I'm (1) you to my sister's wedding party next Friday. All my family and friends will be there to (2) I want to play some (3) games. Bring some music, so we can play Musical (4) The party will be at 12 Pyramids Street (my house!) next to the library.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Salma's birthday is in April. She is having a birthday party at the house. She will invite all her family members and friends to the party. Her friend wants to play some party games at the party. She will tell her friend Mona to bring some music so they can play Musical chairs. She'll tell all her friends to wear something pink. She will have fun with her friends. They will take a lot of photos.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Salma's party.
a) wedding b) birthday c) graduation d) school
- 2 Salma's birthday is in
a) April b) October c) May d) November

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where will the birthday party be?
.....

- 4 What will Salma's friends wear?
.....

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we played lots of games had fun, and ate lots of cake.
.....

- 2 what games do you want to play
.....

2024 الحيزة - البلوشين

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"A birthday party"

- When will it be?
- Who will you invite?
- How will you celebrate?

مجاب عليه
صفحة
255

الحيزة - البلوشين 2024



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

Hide and seek	لعبة العميص	traditional	تقليدي
Musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	Pass the parcel	لعبة نقل الطرود
play games	يلعب الألعاب	give presents	يعطي الهدايا
open presents	يفتح الهدايا	play music	تشغل الموسيقى
paper	ورق	winner	فائز
popular	مشهور	wrap presents	يغلف الهدايا
wide	واسع	get together	يجتمعون معًا
seeker	الباحث	wedding	زفاف

Lesson (2)

Cheese rolling	دحرجة الجبن	Kite festival	مهرجان الصنوبر الورقية
Chinese New Year	عيد رأس السنة الصينية	La Tomatina	مهرجان الصنوبر
festival	احتفال / عيد	hill	تل / هضبة
funny	مضحك	good luck	حظ سعيد
monsters	وحوش	weird	غريب
silly	سخيف	traditions	تقاليد
mud	طين	dragon	تنين
envelope	ظرف	messy	فوضوي

Lesson (3)

Ful Medames	فول مدمس	culture	ثقافة
basbousa	بسبوسة	wonderful	رائع
country	دولة / بلد	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
history	تاريخ	garlic	ثوم
rich	غني	semolina	دقيق السميد
karate	كاراتيه	syrup	شراب السكر
ideas	أفكار	proud	فخور
energy	طاقة	sweet	حلو
hospitable	مضياف	authors	مؤلفون
prizes	جوائز	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء
visitors	زوار	friendly	ودود

Lessons (4 & 5)

information	معلومات	library	مكتبة
invitation	دعوة	guests	ضيوف
address	عنوان	celebration	احتفال
missing	مفقود	school yard	ساحة المدرسة
road	طريق	shorts	شورت
whole	كل	sports day	يوم رياضي

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

1) Regular verbs:

Subject (الماعل) + (inf.) + الفعل في المصدر (ed/d/ied)

eg We celebrated Ahmed's birthday yesterday.

2) Irregular verbs:

Subject (الماعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل

eg I won the race last year.

- Some irregular verbs:

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	run	ran	fall	fell
win	won	fly	flew	give	gave
tell	told	have	had	say	said
throw	threw	wear	wore	buy	bought
make	made	forget	forgot	go	went
come	came	write	wrote	bring	brought

Unit 9

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....	لعبة نقل الطرود	.....	يعطى الهدايا
.....	يلعب الألعاب	.....	لعبة الغميضة
.....	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	.....	يغلف الهدايا
.....	يشغل الموسيقى	.....	يفتح الهدايا
.....	ورق	.....	زفاف
.....	مشهور	.....	فائز

Lesson 2

.....	رائع	.....	تقاليد
.....	فوضوى	.....	تل / هضبة
.....	الهند	.....	غريب
.....	آسيا	.....	ظرف
.....	وحوش	.....	طين
.....	تين	.....	حظ سعيد
.....	درجة الجبن	.....	مهرجان الطماطم
.....	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	.....	عيد رأس السنة الصينية

Lesson 3

.....	بسبوسة	.....	زيت الزيتون
.....	مضيف	.....	مؤلفون
.....	فول مدمس	.....	كاراته
.....	ثقافة	.....	فخور
.....	مميز	.....	أفكار
.....	دولة / بلد	.....	طاقة
.....	ثوم	.....	جوائز
.....	تاريخ	.....	منطقة سيناء
.....	دقيق السميد	.....	زوار
.....	شراب السكر	.....	ودود

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	عنوان	.....	دعوة
.....	حفلة عيد ميلاد	.....	مكتبة
.....	ضيوف	.....	ساحة المدرسة
.....	احتفال	.....	تيسرت
.....	معلومات	.....	شورت

WRITING TIME

جميعاً لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة



لكن يمكنك من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about party games:

- 1 My favorite party game is + اسم اللعبة.
- 2 You need (people/ music/ presents) to play this game.
- 3 To play this game + خطوات لعب اللعبة

"My favorite game"

My favorite party game is Hide and seek. You need people and a wide place to play this game. To play this game, the seeker closes his/her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The last one left is the winner.

Writing about an unusual festival:

- 1 What is the name of the festival?
- 2 Where does it take place?
- 3 How do people celebrate it?

"La Tomatina"

My favorite festival is La Tomatina. It takes place in Spain. Everybody throws old tomatoes at each other. After a few minutes, everyone is covered in red. They do that for fun.

Writing an invitation:

- 1 Dear + اسم الشخص المدعو.
- 2 I'm inviting you to + اسم المناسبة.
- 3 It's on + تاريخ وموعد المناسبة.
- 4 It will be at + مكان المناسبة.
- 5 We will + أسماء الأنشطة.
- 6 You can wear + زي المناسبة.
- 7 I hope you can come.

"An invitation to my birthday party"

Dear Adel,
I'm inviting you to my birthday party. It's on Sunday, April 12th. The party will be at the City Park. We will play some party games and eat cakes. You can wear something blue. I hope you can come.
Ola

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Correct the sentences:

- 1 Basbousa is very **salty**.

- 2 Egypt is full of **old** people.

- 3 About 90% of Egypt is **green land**.

- 4 Ferial Abdelaziz is a **tennis** player.

2 Write the past form of the verbs below.

see	_____	give	_____
push	_____	ask	_____
run	_____	tell	_____
fall	_____	have	_____
win	_____	say	_____

3 Complete the sentences with the adjectives:

wonderful – useful – colorful – helpful – beautiful

- 1 Alia's dress is _____. We all love it!
- 2 Learning about Egypt is _____. It has an amazing history!
- 3 Our school's cleaners are very _____. They help keep our school clean.
- 4 Those tools are very _____ for fixing our door.
- 5 That shirt has red, blue, and green stripes. It's very _____.



Listening



4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(الإجابة راجع بعض الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We make a lot of _____ and many of them are famous.
a) games b) movies c) cakes d) foods
- 2 We have _____ who won important prizes.
a) authors b) players c) students d) teachers
- 3 We love _____.
a) sports b) movies c) books d) stories
- 4 Ferial Abdelaziz is a famous _____ player.
a) football b) tennis c) basketball d) karate



Reading

2

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 In La Tomatina festival, everybody threw _____ at each other. في مهرجان لا توماتينا
a) potatoes b) onions c) tomatoes d) eggs
- 2 Heba _____ the present to see what was inside. المتأخره - إماره العظميه 2023
a) wrapped b) unwrapped c) played d) sent

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

eyes — noses — hide — game — winner

الشرقيه - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

Hide and seek is a very old and popular (1) Many players can join in this exciting game. The seeker closes his or her (2) and counts to ten. The other players (3) The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

سرم 202

Last Friday, we went to the park. In the morning, Ali and Youssef played football. Lara and Laila rode their bikes. Salma flew her red kite. Eyad and Walid sang a song. In the afternoon, the children played "Hide and seek." Ali was the seeker. Salma was the last one left. She was the winner. We all had fun. We took some photos. We ate ice-cream, then we went back home at 6 o'clock.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The children went to the
a) zoo b) park c) library d) museum
- 2 Salma's kite is
a) orange b) black c) white d) red

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the children play in the afternoon?

- 4 When did the children go back home?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 She (doesn't) watch television yesterday.

الفاخرة دار السينما 2024

- 2 Naglaa's dress is (beauty).

الفاخرة دار السينما 2024

- 3 Tamer helps his mom. He is (helping).

مروسة موحدة لك الإبحار 2024

- 4 I'm very (care) when I go online.

فاخرة إدارة شمس الف 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

2

egypt is famous for its history

الفاخرة دار السينما 2024

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My favorite party game"

- What is the game?
- Where do you play it?
- How do you play it?

محابب
صفحة
255

الفاخرة دار السينما 2024

Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

Well done!

85 : 100%

Well done!

103



(الإجابة واحدة من الخيارات أ، ب، ج، د)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Egypt is a country.
(small – short – big)
- 2 Egypt is famous for its
(jobs – cities – history)
- 3 We should be of our country.
(bored – proud – sad)

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Hide and seek is a party (festival – game – celebration).
- 2 We (see – saw – seeing) Mr. Ahmed in town a few days ago.
- 3 They (build – builds – built) a new bridge over that river last year.
- 4 Ful Medames is (beans – semolina – cake) cooked very slowly and served with olive oil and garlic.
- 5 A/An (player – author – visitor) writes movies and stories.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 often – games – play – The children.
- 2 are – Egyptians – friendly – very – visitors – to.
- 3 Egypt – Learning – is – about – wonderful.
- 4 party – I'm – a birthday – having – Thursday – next.
- 5 games – You – need – people – to play – party.

MARCH REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر مارس.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile is the longest in the world.
 a) oasis b) forest c) desert d) river
 أسبوط - إدارة القوصية 2024
- 2 My grandpa is a farmer. He lives in a
 a) desert b) village c) city d) river
- 3 The mice live in
 a) hotels b) holes c) schools d) rivers
 الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024
- 4 The Nile has 2 in Egypt.
 a) centers b) branches c) mountains d) oases
 الفيوم - 2024
- 5 I was very because I forgot my homework.
 a) kind b) nervous c) happy d) quiet
- 6 The city is very busy and
 a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) free
 أسبوط - إدارة ديروط 2024
- 7 Can I have a of water, please?
 a) slice b) piece c) bottle d) bar
- 8 People during Ramadan. They don't eat or drink until sunset.
 a) plane b) represent c) sleep d) fast
 القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
- 9 is a month when Muslims fast.
 a) Shawwal b) October c) January d) Ramadan
- 10 Kahk are delicious
 a) cake b) cookies c) candies d) juice
- 11 My brother drank a of apple juice.
 a) bar b) slice c) packet d) carton
- 12 We are eating of pizza.
 a) bottles b) bars c) cups d) slices
 الجيزة 2024
- 13 Sham El-Nessim is a in Egypt.
 a) mosque b) month c) festival d) year
 بنى سويف - إدارة إحصاءيا 2024
- 14 We can buy kahk from a
 a) library b) bank c) school d) bakery
 الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024
- 15 In Hide and seek, the players and the seeker tries to find them.
 a) count b) hide c) run d) seek
 لإسماعيلية 2024

16 Our food is I like it.

القاهرة - إدارة حلوان 2024

- a) bad b) awful c) helpful d) wonderful

17 Ali is very He helped me.

الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024

- a) colorful b) painful c) helpful d) careful

18 I like to fly

القليوبية - إدارة المبور 2024

- a) cheese b) hospital c) kites d) dessert

19 Egyptians are friendly to who come to see Egypt. 2024 الشرق الأوسط - إدارة القادش

- a) festivals b) celebrations c) visitors d) hosts

20 means having something different.

القاهرة - إدارة روض المرح 2024

- a) Painful b) Special c) Scary d) Boring

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sad – pleased – bright – mice – seeds

القاهرة - إدارة كوبري القبة 2024

The city mouse visited the country mouse in the hole in the ground. The country mouse was (1) He gave his friend grass and (2) The city mouse said, "Thank you". You know, the city is pretty and full of (3) lights. The city mouse and the country mouse are two (4)

nervous – gate – T-shirt – years – black

الشرقية 2024

I remember my first day of school. I was seven (1) old. I put on a white (2) , gray pants, and (3) shoes. I was (4) The teacher asked me to sit down. I studied science and math. It was fun. The next day, I wanted to go to school.

sunrise – sunset – fast – mosque – celebrate

دمياط 2024

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims (1) during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until (2) People (3) Eid Al-Fitr in different ways. People say Eid Mubarak to their families and go to the (4)

popular – place – winner – find – seeker

الشرقية - إدارة القنايات 2024

Hide and seek is an old game. Players need a wide (1) to play it. One player, called the (2) closes his eyes and counts to ten. The seeker tries to (3) the other players who go to hide. The last one left is the (4)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 What did Magdy (wore) yesterday? التلويبة - إدارة بنها 2024
- 2 What subject (do) you study yesterday?
- 3 We (play) football yesterday. الجيزة - إدارة بدرشين 2024
- 4 Ahmed (visit) his uncle last week. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024
- 5 They didn't (went) to their school. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024
- 6 Two years ago, we (have) a very special party. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 7 He (isn't) hungry last night.
- 8 (Do) you go to school yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة مهبيا 2024
- 9 My dad (be) forty in his last birthday. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
- 10 A: Did you ride a bike yesterday? B: No, I (don't).
- 11 He will buy a (bar) of juice.
- 12 My uncle (not come) early yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الغربية 2024
- 13 Rana (wear) a nice dress last night. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم 2024
- 14 My grandma (lives) in a village when she was young. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 15 He wants a (packet) of soap.
- 16 Naglaa's dress is (beauty). التلويبة - إدارة بنها 2024
- 17 She has a (color) dress. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024
- 18 Ahmed helps his mom. He is (helping).
- 19 Alexandria is a (wonder) city.
- 20 She (leave) home early yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة المايلى 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 ahmed visited his grandpa yesterday الفيوم 2024
- 2 what's the most famous food in Egypt القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 3 where did the country mouse live بورسعيد 2024
- 4 egypt is famous for its history الجيزة 2024
- 5 ali drank a bottle of water التلويبة - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024
- 6 Did you go to assuit last week أسيوط - إدارة القوصية 2024

Theme

4

I'm a responsible person
أنا شخص مسؤول





Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about social media.
 give advice with *should*.
 learn and say words that start with un-.
 read and listen to a short story.
 write about the pros and cons of computer games.
 research and make a leaflet.

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

• يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
 • يعطي نصائح باستخدام «يجب».
 • يتعلم ويستخدم كلمات تبدأ بـ un-
 • يقرأ ويسمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
 • يكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
 • يبحث ويقرأ ويكتب ملصقًا.

Did you know?

The first call from a * **cell phone** was made in 1973. We check our cell phones about 150 times a day. I don't think it is healthy.

* **cell phone** show that around 98.29 million Egyptians had cell phones by 2022; that's around 93.4% of Egypt's total * **population** in 2022. / * **cell phone** هاتف خلوي (محمول) | * **studies** دراسات | * **population** عدد السكان



1. Listen, point, and say:

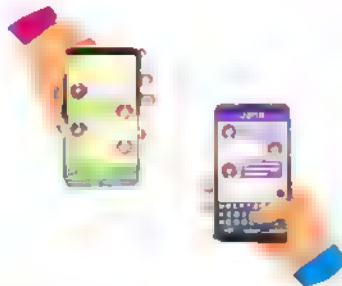
استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



message

يراسل / رسالة



chat

يتحدث / محادثة



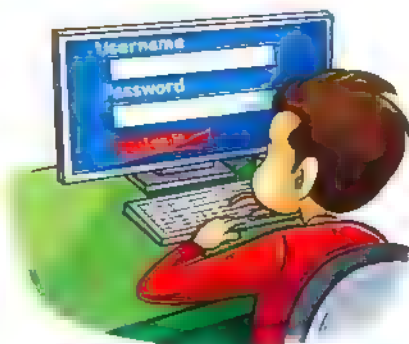
password

كلمة المرور



do research

يُجرى بحثًا



log in

يتسجيل / يدخل



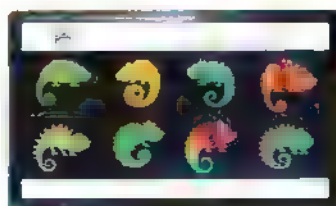
chameleon

حرباء



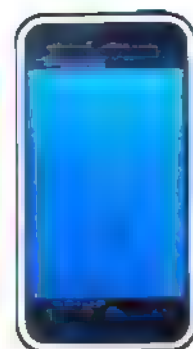
tablet

جهاز لوحي (تابلت)



website

موقع إلكتروني



cell phone

هاتف خلوي (محمول)



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ch) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش) في (chat) / (research).

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج) كما في (message).

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ch) أحيانًا ينطقان /k/ (ك) في (chameleon).

• لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما في (information) / (presentation).

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.)	شيق / مثير للاهتمام	research	بحث	library website	موقع المكتبة الإلكتروني
place	مكان	amazing (adj.)	مذهل / مذهش	presentation	عرض تقديمي
respectful (adj.)	محترم / متسم بالاحترام	information	معلومات	ideas	أفكار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
log into	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول إلى	logged into	ينشئ
change	يغير	create	created
chat	يحدث	message	messed
copy	ينسخ	remember	remembered
		plan	planned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
do	يقول	get	يحصل على
say	يقول	know	يعرف
find	يجد	write	يكتب
			wrote

Expressions and Phrases

create a password	ينشئ كلمة مرور	get information	يحصل على المعلومات
the same color as	نفس لون	What else?	ماذا أيضاً؟
all around	في كل مكان	chat with someone	يحدث شخصاً ما
make a presentation	يقدم عرضاً	Write your own words.	اكتب بأسلوبك الخاص.

Take care!

هناك بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كاسم أو فعل مثل (message) أو (chat):

Noun (اسم)	Verb (فعل)
message I sent my friend a message about the information. رسالة	I need to message Yara about the information. يرأسل
chat We had a chat to plan the presentation. دردشة	I chatted with Yara yesterday about homework. يدرش

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- I logged into the school library to get some (food – friends – information – money).
- I use the cell phone to (eat – chat – jump – find) with my friends.
- I need to (feed – eat – copy – do) this page in my notebook.
- I want to (chat – do – create – change) this shirt. It's not the right size.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

What are you doing, Dalia?

ماذا تفعلين يا داليا؟



I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into this library website and I created a password to get information.

أنا أقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي عن الحرايب. إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام للغاية! لقد قمت بتسجيل الدخول إلى موقع المكتبة الإلكتروني هذا وأنشأت كلمة مرور للحصول على المعلومات.

Dalia



Mom

What does it say?

ماذا يقول؟



Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are.

الحرايب تغير لونها. يكونون بنفس لون المكان الذي يتواجدون فيه.

Dalia



Mom

Wow! That's interesting! What else?

واو! هذا شيق! ماذا أيضًا؟

They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. But I need to do more research. I want to message Yara and chat with her. She knows some great websites.

Dalia



لديها عيون مذهلة ويمكنها رؤية كل شيء من حولها. نكسى بحجة يس إجراء المزيد من بحث. أريد مراسلة يارا ومحدثتها. إنها تعرف بعض المواقع الإلكترونية الرائعة.



Mom

Are you making a presentation about chameleons?

هل ستقدمين عرضًا عن الحرايى؟

Dalia



Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures.

نعم، أنا سأقدم عرضًا مع يارا. أحتاج إلى إلقاء نظرة على الكثير من المواقع الإلكترونية والعثور على بعض الصور الجميلة.



Mom

Remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words.

تذكرى أن تتسمى بالاحترام. لا تنسخي المعلومات. اعثرى على أفكار واكتبي بأسلوبك الخاص بك.



Important sentences

جمل هامة

* Dalia is doing her homework about chameleons.

أنا أقوم بعمل واجبى المنزل عن الحرايى.

* Chameleons change color.

الحرايى تغير لونها.

* They have amazing eyes and they can see all around.

لديها عيون مذهلة ويمكنها رؤية كل شيء من حولها.

* Chameleons are so interesting!

إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام للغاية!



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) محافظة بنى سويف إدارة ناصح 2024



- The chameleon is a kind of
a) reptiles b) birds c) fish d) plants
- Chameleons have amazing
a) legs b) eyes c) arms d) teeth
- They can change their
a) shape b) size c) body d) color
- They eat and leaves.
a) beans b) fish c) insects d) meat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I go to the to read books for my research. الاسئلة ٢٠٢٢
a) shop b) museum c) library d) park
- They need to create a to log into a school library.
a) password b) website c) message d) chat
- Did you do your on your tablet? B: Yes, I did. الاسئلة المبره ٢٠٢٢
a) library b) research c) color d) dress
- I sent a to my friend to help me. القيومية القناطر 2024
a) school b) color c) hospital d) message
- I use my to do my homework online. الحمراء - وجبة الامة الاحمدية 2024
a) tablet b) pen c) book d) notebook
- have amazing eyes and they can see all around. الحمراء - سبب ٢٠٢٤
a) Birds b) Chameleons c) Fish d) Lions
- Chameleons change الاسئلة القريش 2024
a) food b) color c) money d) books
- I logged the library website to find information. الاسئلة اشروت 2024
a) on b) at c) into d) to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

message – found – tablet – chatted – felt

دمياط - فارمكور 2024

Last week, I had some homework. I worked with my friend Ramy. I sent him a (1) My friend did research on his (2) We (3) some information. We (4) to plan the presentation. The teacher liked our presentation.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Youssef. Yesterday, I stayed at home and watched an interesting program with my dad. It is about the reptiles. I was amazed when I saw the chameleons because they can change their color as the place where they are. I asked my dad to help me to log into safe websites. My dad showed me how to create a password to find any information and advised me to be respectful and don't copy them. I found many pictures and shared them with my friends.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They watched a program about
 a) plants b) oceans c) reptiles d) food
- 2 Youssef shared with his friends.
 a) books b) pictures c) videos d) games

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why was Youssef amazed when he saw the chameleon?
- 4 What did his father advise him to do?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 i'm doing research about chameleons
- 2 ali knows some great websites

الفيوم 2024

شبين القناطر 2024

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Chameleons"

 صاحب عمل
 صفحة
 255

..... interesting – change color – amazing eyes

.....

.....

.....

.....



البقاء آمنًا على الإنترنت Staying Safe Online



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

safe (adj.)	آمن	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	creative (adj.)	مبدع
personal information	معلومات شخصية	bullying	التنمر	adult	شخص بالغ

Extra vocabulary

online	عبر الإنترنت	devices	أجهزة	ideas	أفكار
thoughts	أفكار / آراء	pros	الإيجابيات	cons	السلبيات
interesting (adj.)	شيق / مثير	scary (adj.)	مخيف	secret (adj.)	سر / سري
strong (adj.)	قوي	stupid (adj.)	غبي	quickly	بسرعة
late (adj.)	متأخر	ugly (adj.)	بشع / قبيح	parents	الوالدين

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
share	شارك	talk	يتحدث
contact	يتصل	tag	يصنع علامة / يشير إلى
bully	يتنمر	accept	يقبل

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
learn	يتعلم	know	يعرف
feel	يشعر	keep	يحتفظ بـ

Expressions and Phrases

share ideas/photos	يشارك الأفكار / الصور	have fun	يستمتع
make/be friends with	يكون صداقات مع	talk to	يتحدث إلى / مع
tag (somebody) in photos	يشير إلى شخص في صور	keep the password secret	يحتفظ بكلمة المرور سرًا
turn off	يطفئ	check with	يتحقق من الأمر مع
online bullying	التنمر عبر الإنترنت	That's horrible!	هذا فظيع!
stop the bullying	يتوقف عن التنمر	say sorry	يعبر عن أسفه
feel much happier	يشعر بسعادة أكبر	That's really cool!	هذا حقًا رائع!

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن الحروف (cial) تُنطق /ʃə/ (شال) كما في (social).

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) لا ينطقان «ent» في كلمة (thoughts).



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

«وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي» هي عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار والآراء والمعلومات ونستمتع.



Pros of social media إيجابيات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

1



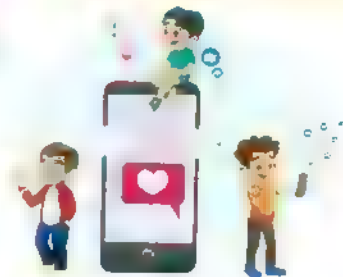
You can have fun.
يمكنك أن تستمتع بوقتك.

2



You can share photos.
يمكنك مشاركة الصور.

3



You can talk to friends and family.
يمكنك التحدث مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.

4



You can find information for your homework.
يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلي.

5



You can be creative.
يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا.

6



You can play games.
يمكنك لعب ألعاب.

7



You can learn interesting things.
يمكنك تعلم أشياء شيقة.

Cons of social media سلبات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

1



People you don't know can contact you.

يمكن للأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم الاتصال بك.

2



People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to.

يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة إليك في الصور عندما لا تريد أن يفعلوا ذلك.

3



People can take your personal information.

يمكن للناس أن يأخذوا معلوماتك الشخصية.

4



Some people can bully you.

يمكن لبعض الأشخاص أن يتنمروا عليك.

Check

1 What is social media?

2 What are the cons of social media?



3. Look and notice:

انظر ولاحظ:

You should accept to be friends only with people you know.

يجب أن تقبل أن تكون صديقاً فقط للأشخاص الذين تعرفهم.

You should keep your password secret.

يجب أن تبقى كلمة المرور الخاصة بك سرية.

You should keep your personal information secret.

يجب أن تحافظ على سرية معلوماتك الشخصية.



You should only give your phone number to your friends.

يجب أن تعطى رقم هاتفك لأصدقائك فقط.

You shouldn't use your phone late at night.

لا يجب لك استخدام هاتفك في وقت متأخر من الليل.

You should turn your phone off at night.

يجب أن تغلق هاتفك في الليل.

You should create strong passwords.

يجب أن تنشئ كلمات مرور قوية.

You should check with an adult.

يجب أن تتحقق مع شخص بالغ.

You should log into safe websites.

يجب أن تسجل الدخول إلى مواقع آمنة.

Online bullying التمر عبر الإنترنت

Listening script page 61 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



4. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Magdy

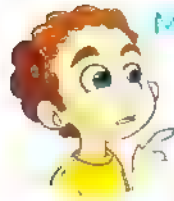
Wael, you know I started at the new school?

واؤل، هل تعلم أني بدأت في المدرسة الجديدة؟

Yes! Is it nice?



Wael



Magdy

Yes, but I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages.

نعم، لكن لدي مشكلة مع التمر عبر الإنترنت. كان هناك ولد في صفي، شريف، كان يرسل لي رسائل.

What did he say?



Wael



Magdy

He said I was stupid and no one liked me.

قال إنني غبي ولم يحبني أحد.

That's horrible! Did you tell someone?



Wael



Magdy

Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif.

نعم، أبي. ذهب إلى المدرسة وتحدث إلى معلمتي. وأطلع معلمتي على رسائل شريف.



What did your teacher do?

ماذا فعلت معلمتك؟

Wael



Magdy

She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online.

تحدثت مع شريف ووالديه. لقد أوقفوا التنمر جميعًا. قالوا إنني لا يجب أن أتحدث إلى شريف عبر الإنترنت.



And Sherif?

وشريف؟

Wael



Magdy

He said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now – keep the messages and tell an adult quickly.

عبر عن أسفه لي. لكنني أشعر بسعادة أكبر الآن! أعرف ما يجب علي فعله الآن حيال التنمر عبر الإنترنت - احتفظ بالرسائل وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا بسرعة.



That's really cool! When are you coming to see me?

هذا رائع حقًا! متى سوف تأتي لتراني؟

Wael





Language Focus

Giving advice:

إعطاء النصيحة:

Should

We use "should" to talk about what we think is right to do.

نستخدم «يجب أن» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الصحيح القيام به.

..... (الفعل في المصدر) + **should** + **inf.** (الفاعل) Subject



I **should** turn my phone off at night.

يجب أن أطفئ هاتفي ليلاً.

Shouldn't

We use "shouldn't" to talk about what we think is wrong to do.

نستخدم «يجب ألا» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الخطأ القيام به.

..... (الفعل في المصدر) + **shouldn't** + **inf.** (الفاعل) Subject



I **shouldn't** use my phone late at night.

يجب ألا أستخدم هاتفي في وقت متأخر من الليل.

تمرين

Write (should / shouldn't) to complete the sentences:

- 1 You sleep in class.
- 2 We use safe websites.
- 3 If you are sick, you go to the doctor.
- 4 You share your personal information with anyone.
- 5 You keep your password secret.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 It's important to stay online. (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
 - a) safe
 - b) dangerous
 - c) bad
 - d) useless
- 2 You should keep your password
 - a) sick
 - b) secret
 - c) happy
 - d) sad
- 3 You keep your personal information secret.
 - a) should
 - b) can
 - c) must
 - d) shouldn't
- 4 You should to be friends only with people you know.
 - a) share
 - b) chat
 - c) accept
 - d) keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sara is a girl. She always has good ideas.
 - a) lazy
 - b) sad
 - c) creative
 - d) stupid
- 2 I can my friends in photos online. (بني سويف 2024)
 - a) tag
 - b) play
 - c) study
 - d) move
- 3 We use computers to information and have fun. (المنيا 2024)
 - a) do
 - b) share
 - c) bully
 - d) cut
- 4 Computers and phones are (الجيزة 2024)
 - a) advice
 - b) advise
 - c) advised
 - d) devices
- 5 I use media when I go online. (القاهرة الريفية 2024)
 - a) book
 - b) history
 - c) social
 - d) local
- 6 You must safe online. (إسكندرية 2024)
 - a) play
 - b) stay
 - c) try
 - d) do
- 7 To be safe online, you should create a strong
 - a) website
 - b) message
 - c) password
 - d) chat
- 8 Online is bad and you should talk to an adult. (المنيا 2024)
 - a) chatting
 - b) messaging
 - c) researching
 - d) bullying

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

night – games – bully – homework – personal

محافظة الشرقية منيا القمح 2024

When I'm online, I'm very careful, and I keep my password secret. I can talk to my friends. I should keep my (1) information secret. I can play (2) I can find information for my (3) I should turn my phone off at (4)

Read the text and answer the questions:

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information. We can have fun, share photos, or talk to friends and family on social media. We can also find information for our homework and learn interesting things, too. On the other hand, there are some reasons why social media can be bad. People can take your personal information, and some people can bully you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) bullying b) social media c) cell phones d) computer games
- We can use social media to find
a) family b) fun c) information d) reasons

Answer the following questions:

- What is good about social media?
- What is bad about social media?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- You should (creates) a password to log into the website.
- We should (are) proud of our country. الجيزة 2024
- You should (uses) social media safely. البحر الأحمر 2024
- You shouldn't (stayed) up late. المنيا - السلام 2024
- He shouldn't (tells) lies. القاهرة - الشروق 2024
- You (shouldn't) use strong passwords. الجيزة 2024
- Ali (shouldn't) eat healthy food. المنيا 2024
- I should (helping) my friends. الجيزة - الوراق 2024
- You (shouldn't) be safe online. القاهرة - ميدان القبة 2024
- Children shouldn't (eats) too many sweets. المنيا 2024
- Students should (studies) hard. المنيا - مصر - الفرج 2024
- We (shouldn't) clean our streets.

Punctuate the following:

- you shouldn't speak to strangers. الجيزة 2024
- people can take your personal information المنيا 2024



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

neighbor	جار	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
problem	مشكلة	unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحي

Extra vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	son	ابن	other	آخر
apartment	شقة	together	معًا	lovely (adj.)	جميل / رائع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ask يسأل	asked	answer يجيب	answered
love يحب	loved	stop يتوقف عن	stopped
agree يوافق	agreed	decide يقرر	decided

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
meet يقابل	met	know يعرف	knew
say يقول	said	find يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	go outside	يذهب للخارج
I don't know.	لا أعلم.	I agree.	أنا أوافقك الرأي.
That's a lovely idea.	هذه فكرة جميلة.	at the end of	في نهاية الـ



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) في كلمة (neighbor) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Take care!

e.g. (son ابن) / (sun شمس)

بعض الكلمات متشابهة في النطق لكنها تختلف في المعنى والهجاء.

يمكنك إضافة المادّة "un" في بداية الكلمة للحصول على عكس المعنى.

e.g.

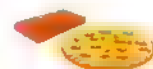
healthy



صحي



unhealthy



غير صحي

happy



سعيد



unhappy



غير سعيد

How two neighbors helped each other

كيف ساعدت الجارتان كل منهما الأخرى



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



The Beginning

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad.

التقت هدير بجارتها رانيا في المطعم. كانت رانيا حزينة.

The Middle

Hadeer asked, "What's the matter, my friend?" Rania answered, "It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do."

Hadeer said, "Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park." Rania said, "Yes, I agree."

سألت هدير: «ما الأمر يا صديقتي؟» أجابت رانيا: «هذه أطفالي نانسي ونادر. يحبون اللعب على الحاسوب. لا يفعلون واجبهما المنزلي. هما لا يخرجان. أنا لا أعلم ماذا أفعل.»

قالت هدير: «نعم، إنه مشكلة. تارك، ابني، هو نفسه. يلعب كثيرًا على الحاسوب. هذا غير صحي. يجب على الأطفال أن يتوقفوا عن اللعب بعد ساعة واحدة. يجب أن يفعلوا أشياء أخرى. يجب أن يلعبوا مع أصدقائهم. يجب أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة.» قالت رانيا: «نعم، أنا أوافقك الرأي.»

The End

Hadeer said, "Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun."

Rania said, "That's a lovely idea. And they can go to the park together. Thank you, Hadeer!"

قالت هدير: «لماذا لا نجد ألعابًا حيث يمكنهم اللعب مع أصدقائهم. سيحب طارق أن يلعب أكثر مع نادر. هل يمكن أن يأتي نادر لشقتنا؟ بإمكانهم اللعب معًا والاستمتاع بوقتهم.» قالت رانيا: «هذه فكرة جميلة. وبإمكانهما الذهاب إلى الحديقة معًا. شكرًا لك يا هدير.»

Check

1 Where did Hadeer meet Rania?

2 Why is Rania unhappy?



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 Amira's children love playing
 a) tennis b) computer games c) football d) handball
- 2 They don't do their
 a) sport b) housework c) homework d) shopping
- 3 Playing computer games for a long time is
 a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) delicious
- 4 They should stop playing after hour(s).
 a) one b) two c) three d) four

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We live in a big
 a) hospital b) school c) apartment d) restaurant
- 2 A: What is the ? B: I have a problem.
 a) color b) matter c) time d) game
- 3 We can have lunch at the
 a) website b) library c) restaurant d) hole
- 4 It's to play computer games for a long time.
 a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
- 5 They don't their homework.
 a) do b) make c) go d) meet
- 6 I played with my cousins.
 a) presents b) jobs c) games d) homework
- 7 You should playing computer games after one hour.
 a) use b) do c) stop d) agree
- 8 Children can play together and fun.
 a) make b) know c) have d) meet

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unhealthy – messages – online – healthy – angry

2024

Kenzy is my cousin. She lives in the USA. She spends most of her time(1)..... searching for information for her homework, chatting with her friends, sending (2), playing games, and sharing photos. Her dad was(3)..... because it's(4)..... . He asked her to use the computer for 2 or 3 hours a day only.

Read the text and answer the questions:

2024

Mona met her neighbor Sara at the restaurant. Sara was sad. Her children, Hoda and Ali, love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. She doesn't know what to do. Mona has the same problem with her son. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sara is Mona's
a) neighbor b) child c) sister d) grandma
- 2 Sara's children love playing
a) football b) tennis c) basketball d) computer games

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Mona and Sara meet?
.....
- 4 When should children stop playing computer games?
.....

Punctuate the following:

i like to play computer games

2024





1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات	team	فريق
leaflet	مشور	bullying online	التنمر عن طريق الإنترنت	poster	ملصق

Extra vocabulary

reason	سبب	screen	شاشة	outside	بالخارج
problem	مشكلة	prize	جائزة	lives	حيوات (جمع حياة)
headings	عناوين	advice	نصيحة	website	موقع إلكتروني

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
solve يحل	solved	interview يحاور	interviewed

Expressions and Phrases

bad for سيئ لـ	good for جيد لـ	make friends يكون صداقات
at the end في النهاية	say/ think/ believe that يعتقد بأن	in my opinion في رأيي
on the other hand على الجانب الآخر	find out about يتعرف على	look for help يبحث عن المساعدة

Important sentences جمل هامة

"Pros and cons of computer games"

Pros (good things)

- * In some games, children need to solve problems.
في بعض الألعاب، يحتاج الأطفال إلى حل المشكلات.
- * Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.
تحتاج بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر إلى فرق، لذلك يكون الأطفال صداقات ويلعبون مع عائلاتهم.
- * Some computer games also help children think well.
بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر تساعد الأطفال أيضًا على التفكير بشكل جيد.

Cons (bad things)

- * Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets.
يمكن للأطفال قضاء ساعات طويلة على أجهزة الكمبيوتر والتابلت الخاصة بهم.
- * Children look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework.
الأطفال ينظرون إلى الشاشة ولا يذهبون للخارج أو يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية.



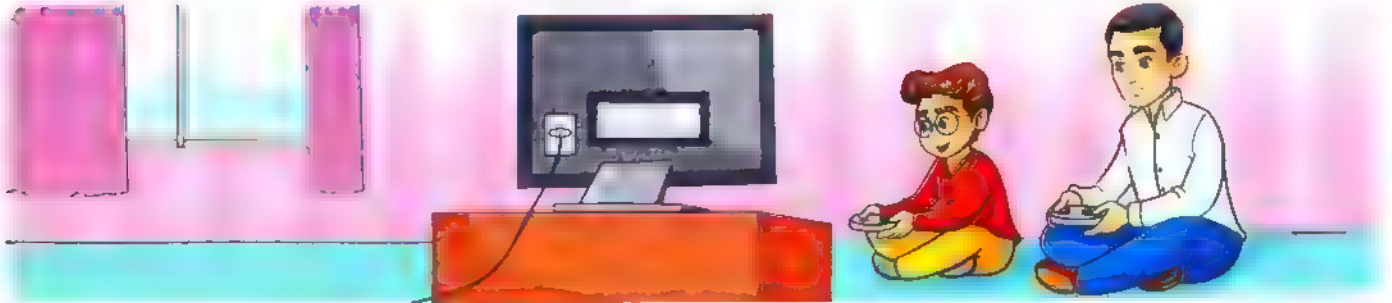
Pros and cons of computer games

إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Paragraph 1

Bad things about computer games مساوئ ألعاب الكمبيوتر

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

يقول الكثيرون إن ألعاب الكمبيوتر سيئة للأطفال. يمكن أن يقضي الأطفال ساعات طويلة على أجهزة الكمبيوتر وأجهزة التابلت. إنهم ينظرون إلى الشاشة ولا يخرجون للتحرك، ولا يفعلون واجباتهم المنزلية. يقول الآباء إن هذا غير صحي لأطفالهم.

Paragraph 2

Good things about computer games إيجابيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

ولكن، من ناحية أخرى، هناك بعض الأسباب التي تجعل ألعاب الكمبيوتر جيدة للأطفال. في بعض الألعاب، يحتاج الأطفال إلى حل المشكلات. بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر تحتاج فرقًا، لذلك يصنع الأطفال أصدقاء ويلعبون مع أسرهم.

Paragraph 3

My opinion رأيي الشخصي

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

أنا أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر التي أذهب فيها للخارج. أذهب مع عمي وأصدقائي. نحب هذه الألعاب لأنك تجد جائزة في النهاية. في رأيي، يمكننا التمتع بالألعاب، ولكننا نحتاج إلى أشياء أخرى في حياتنا مثل الرياضة وقضاء الوقت مع عائلتنا.



عند الكتابة عن موضوع يتضمن وجهات نظر مختلفة سلبية وإيجابية، فلابد من استخدام التعبيرات الآتية لعرض وجهات النظر المختلفة:

People say/ think/ believe that

للتعبير عن وجهة نظر عامة الناس

On the other hand

للتعبير عن وجهة نظر مختلفة عن عامة الناس

In my opinion

للتعبير عن وجهة نظر الكاتب الشخصية



Project



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

What is a leaflet?

It is a small flat or folded sheet with a printed shape on one or both sides. It is used to provide information in an interesting way.

إنه ورقة صغيرة مسطحة أو مطوية بها شكل مصبوع على أحد الجانبين أو كليهما. يتم استخدامها لتوفير المعلومات بطريقة شيقة.



Research

البحث

Find out about bullying online.

تعرف على التنمر عبر الإنترنت.

Look for help online.

ابحث عن المساعدة على الإنترنت.

Search for information on the internet.

ابحث عن المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت.

Find out which websites are safe.

تعرف على المواقع الآمنة.

Interview teachers.

أجرى مقابلة مع المعلمين.



What to do

ماذا يجب أن أفعل

Tell people about bullying online.

أخبر الناس عن التنمر عبر الإنترنت.

Give advice about bullying.

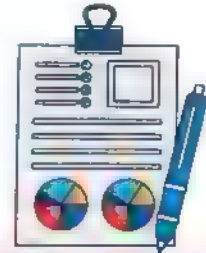
قدم النصيحة بشأن التنمر.

Tell students to stay safe online!

أخبر الطلاب بالبقاء آمنين على الإنترنت!

Give a presentation about being safe online.

قم بإلقاء عرض تقديمي حول الأمان عبر الإنترنت.



What to do more

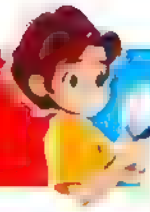
ماذا يجب أن أفعل أكثر

Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school.

اصنع ملصقات أو منشورات وقم بوضعها حول المدرسة.

Talk to teachers and parents.

تحدث مع المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 Many people say that computer games are bad for
a) sports b) plants c) children d) animals
- 2 Children can spend hours on their computers.
a) many b) few c) some d) a lot
- 3 In some games, children need to solve
a) homework b) problems c) mysteries d) math
- 4 Some computer games need
a) toys b) chairs c) teams d) classes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Using modern devices has and cons. الوسيلة - ب - سوء الفهم 2024
a) pros b) books c) price d) prize
- 2 My brother is very good at problems. متيا القمح 2024
a) using b) solving c) playing d) reading
- 3 It's not healthy to look at the of the computer for long hours.
a) tablet b) keyboard c) mouse d) screen
- 4 Some computer games need teams, so children make
a) games b) time c) friends d) money
- 5 Children shouldn't many hours on their computers.
a) do b) solve c) spend d) sleep
- 6 I really like games where I can go and play.
a) inside b) teams c) sports d) outside

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teams – correct – children – solve – games اشهر - ادره - رب شبرا الخيمة 2024

Some people think that computer games are useful. There are some reasons why computer(1)..... are good for children. In some games, children need to(2)..... problems. Some computer games need(3)....., so children make friends and play with each other. Computer games also help(4)..... think well.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

People say that computer games are bad for children. Children spend many hours on their computers or tablets. They look at the screen, and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy. But sometimes computer games are good for children because they need to solve problems in some games. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 means father and mother.
a) Parents b) Children c) Problems d) Games
- 2 Children make and play with their family.
a) cake b) friends c) bed d) food

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where do children spend many hours?
.....
- 4 Why are computer games good for children?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

some computer games need teams

الشرقية - إدارة فافوس 2024

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Computer games"

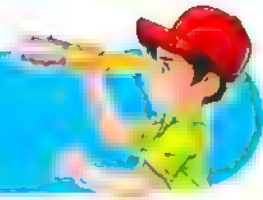
good for – solve problems – need teams

الجمهورية - 2024

كتاب علم
صفحة
255

Unit 10

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

message	براسل / رسالة	interesting	مثير للاهتمام / شيق
chat	محادثة / محادثة	amazing	مذهل / مذهل
password	كلمة المرور	presentation	عرض تقديمي
chameleon	حرباء	respectful	محترم / متشبع بالاحترام
website	موقع إلكتروني	log into	يعود تسجيل الدخول إلى
tablet	جهاز لوحي	information	معلومات
ideas	أفكار	copy	ينسخ
do research	تُجرى بحثًا	cell phone	هاتف خلوي (محمول)

Lesson (2)

safe	آمن	device	جهاز
personal information	معلومات شخصية	scary	مخيف
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	secret	سر / سري
creative	مبدع	late	متأخر
bullying	تسلط	ugly	شع / قبح
adult	شخص بالغ	pros	الإيجابيات
cons	السلبيات	stupid	غبى
ugly	قبح	strong	قوى

Lesson (3)

neighbor	جار	son	ابن
problem	مشكلة	apartment	شقة
unhealthy	غير صحي	together	معًا
restaurant	مطعم	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر

Lessons (4 & 5)

pros	إيجابيات	reason	سبب
cons	سلبيات	screen	شاشة
leaflet	متشور	prize	جائزة
poster	ملصق	advice	نصيحة
team	فريق	bullying online	التسلط عن طريق الإنترنت
lives	حيوات (جمع حياة)	headings	عناوين
outside	بالخارج	problem	مشكلة

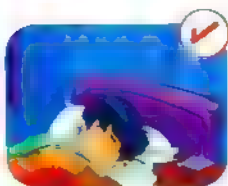
Language Focus

Should

We use "should" to talk about what we think is right to do.

..... (افعل في المصدر) + should + int. (الفعل)

e.g.



I should turn my phone off at night.

Shouldn't

We use "shouldn't" to talk about what we think is wrong to do.

..... (افعل في المصدر) + shouldn't + int. (الفعل)

e.g.



I shouldn't use my phone late at night.



Lesson 1

تأكد من حفظك للكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

.....	يحدث / محادثة	.....	يراسل / رسالة
.....	يجري بحثاً	.....	كلمة المرور
.....	حرياء	.....	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول
.....	عرض تقديمي	.....	موقع إلكتروني

Lesson 2

.....	يتصل	.....	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
.....	آمن	.....	بسرعة
.....	التنمر	.....	أفكار / آراء
.....	مخيف	.....	مبدع
.....	أجهزة	.....	معلومات شخصية
.....	غبي	.....	الوالدين
.....	بشع / قبيح	.....	شخص بالغ

Lesson 3

.....	مطعم	.....	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
.....	جميل / رائع	.....	يوافق
.....	شقة	.....	جار
.....	معاً	.....	غير صحي
.....	ابن	.....	مشكلة

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	جائزة	.....	سليبات
.....	حيوات (جمع حياة)	.....	إيجابيات
.....	نصيحة	.....	منشور
.....	عناوين	.....	فريق
.....	التنمر عن طريق الإنترنت	.....	بالخارج
.....	ملصق	.....	شاشة

WRITING TIME

نجمية لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكن تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about homework/ presentation about animals:

- I'm doing my homework/
presentation about + اسم الحيوان.
- They're so + صفة تميزهم.
- They can + قدرة لديهم.
- They have + شيء مميز يمتلكونه.

"Chameleons"

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting. They can change color. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around.

How to write about social media:

- Social media is when + تعريفها.
- We can + أنشطة يمكن فعلها.
- However, + مساوئ وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

"Social Media"

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas and thoughts. We can have fun, share photos, or talk to friends and family on social media. You can be creative too. However, people you don't know can contact you.

How to write about pros and cons of computer games:

- People say that + رأي الناس في ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- Children can + عيوب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- On the other hand, some computer games can be good because + مميزات ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- In my opinion, + رأيي في ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

"Pros and cons of computer games"

People say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours looking at the screen and they don't go outside or do homework.

On the other hand, some computer games can be good because they help children solve problems. In my opinion, I really like computer games where I go outside.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and complete the phrases:

opinion – the other hand – think/say

1 Many people

2 But, on

3 In my

2 Complete the text with the words in the box:

cell phone – chat – message – chameleons – found – password – logged

Last week, I had some homework about (1) . I (2) into a library website and created a (3) . I (4) information. I worked with my friend, Yara. I sent her a (5) about the information. We had a (6) to plan the presentation. She did research on her (7) because she can't use a tablet. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation! Hooray!

Dalia

3 Make sentences with should or shouldn't:

1 You have a very strong password.

2 You only speak to people you know online.

3 You speak to strangers on the internet.

4 You be an online bully.



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- It's important to be online.
a) nervous b) happy c) worried d) safe
- You should keep your secret.
a) name b) computer c) password d) tablet
- You should to be friends only with people you know.
a) accept b) wait c) hide d) call
- You shouldn't your personal information.
a) contact b) share c) protect d) understand

لقلوية الفناطر 2024



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- I should create a strong for my mobile.
a) photo b) password c) game d) tree
- Social media has pros and
a) coins b) cans c) coats d) cons

إدارة الواسطي 2024

القلوية - بنها 2024

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

number – water – friends – night – secret

الدقلوية 2024

Nada likes the internet. She likes making(1)..... Mom advises her that she should keep the password(2)..... Nada always turns the phone off at(3)..... We shouldn't tell everyone our phone(4).....

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

5

My cousin Shady is 13 years old. He has an account on social media. He likes to share ideas, thoughts, information, and have fun. Shady is always careful when he is online. He accepts to be friends only with people he knows. He keeps his personal information secret. Shady can find information for his homework, so social media is "useful". Shady is creative because he learns interesting things online.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Shady is years old.
a) 13 b) 15 c) 18 d) 20
- 2 The word "useful" means
a) bad b) good c) tall d) weak

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Shady like to do?
.....
- 4 Why is social media useful for Shady?
.....



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

8

- 1 You should (talking) to an adult if someone bullies you. مجلس ٢٠٢١
- 2 I should (helping) my friends. الحرية - الثورة ٢٠٢١
- 3 We (should) throw rubbish in the street. ١ شهر ٢٠٢٤
- 4 You (shouldn't) eat healthy food. القلوبية - القناطر ٢٠٢٤

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

i am making a presentation with mona.

الكتابة - شروع ٢٠٢٤

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الآتية:

7

"Social media"

..... have fun – share photos – strong password



Assess your progress
★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

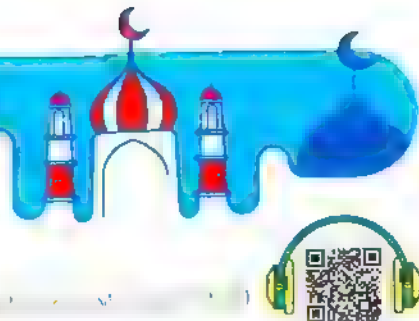
Practice more

65 : 84%

Self-study more

85 : 100%

Well done!



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 When you make a presentation, remember to be
(interesting – respectful – amazing)
- 2 Don't copy
(information – food – photos)
- 3 Find ideas and write your own
(websites – information – words)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

stop – bullying – talked – horrible

- Ali : I had a problem with online
- Omar : That's ! Did you tell someone?
- Ali : Yes, my dad. He to my teacher.
- Omar : What did she do?
- Ali : She told the boys to bullying.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We use the (radio – television – cell phone) to make calls.
- 2 Marwan had a problem with online (bullying – playing – food).
- 3 You should (do – does – did) your homework.
- 4 Don't (eat – copy – do) information. Find ideas and write your own words.
- 5 You (should – shouldn't – are) be an online bully.



Unit Objectives

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about transportation.

practice making sentences with "need" and "must".

learn about different transportation.

read and listen to a short story.

learn about and say words that begin with "tr" and "cr", and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.

write about how to stop air pollution.

research and make a leaflet about road safety.

• بهايه هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على أن:

يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وسائل المواصلات.

يتدرب على تكوين جمل يستخدم "need" و "must".

يتعلم عن وسائل المواصلات المختلفة.

يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

يتعلم وينطق الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ "tr" و "cr"، والأصوات المركبة ai و oa و ea.

يكتب عن كيفية إيقاف تلوث الهواء.

يبحث، يقوم بصميم مشغول عن سلامة عن طريق

Did you know?

The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 *passenger carriages.

Find out!

The Cairo Monorail in Egypt, will be the longest *monorail system in the world. We also have different public transportation in Egypt, such as trains, buses, and taxis.

* passenger carriage

عربات الركاب

* monorail

قطار كهربائي سريع (أحادي السكة)



Means of transportation وسائل النقل والمواصلات



1 Listen, point, and say

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



rail

سكة حديد



airport

مطار



bus

أتوبيس



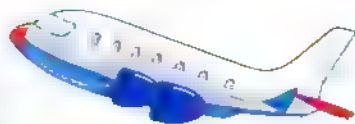
boat

مركب (قارب)



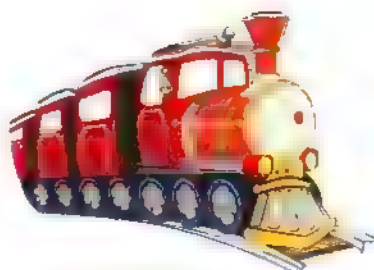
ship

سفينة



plane

طائرة



train

قطار



taxi

سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)



car

سيارة



metro

مترو الأنفاق



air

الهواء / الجو



water

مياه



road

طريق



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما في (transportation).

Extra vocabulary

means	وسائل / طرق	transportation	نقل / مواصلات	land	أرض
vehicle	مركبة	foot	قدم	quiz	اختبار قصير
public (adj)	عام	cool (adj)	رائع	late (adj)	متأخر
town	مدينة صغيرة	far (adj)	بعيد	Luxor	مدينة الأقصر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel يسافر	traveled	interview يجري مقابلة	interviewed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	catch يمسك / يلحق	caught
come يأتي	came	meet يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

go through يمر عبر	on the water على الماء
on the road على الطريق	around the city حول المدينة
on a rail على سكة حديدية	do a quiz يقوم باختبار
public transportation وسائل المواصلات العامة	get to يصل إلى
on foot سيرًا على الأقدام	catch the bus يلحق بالأتوبيس
take the bus يستقل الأتوبيس	Have a nice day! أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا!

Important sentences جمل هامة

- * Seleem is doing a class quiz about public transportation.
سليم يقوم بعمل اختبار قصير في الفصل حول وسائل المواصلات العامة.
- * He comes to school on foot.
يأتي إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.
- * His friend comes by car with his dad.
صديقه يأتي بالسيارة مع والده.

Take care!

e.g. take - catch

take an umbrella

catch a butterfly

يأخذ شمسية

يمسك فراشة

take a bus

catch a bus

يستقل أتوبيس

يلحق بالأتوبيس

بعض الكلمات يختلف معناها طبقًا للنص:

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- The plane is a (bird – car – vehicle – train). It can fly.
- She was late. She couldn't (make – catch – read – need) the bus.
- I like to travel by (train – boat – plane – bus). It's exciting to go through air.
- Both trains and (cars – metros – planes – buses) go on rails.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



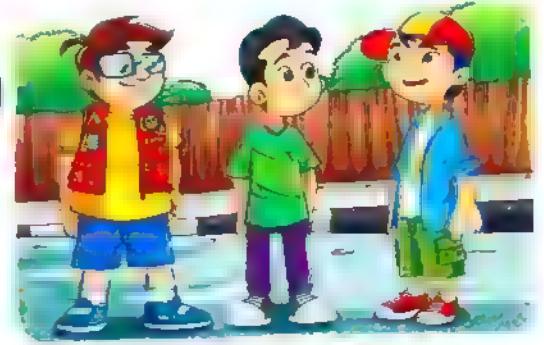
Seleem

Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation.

مرحبًا ماجدا أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار قصير في الفصل حول وسائل المواصلات العامة.

Cool!

Maged



Seleem

How do you get to school?

كيف تصل إلى المدرسة؟

I come to school on foot.

أتى إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

Maged



Seleem

Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل ركبت أتوبيسًا أو مترو الأنفاق من قبل؟

Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends.

فقط إذا تأخرت. أحب أن أتى سيرًا على الأقدام حتى أتمكن من مقابلة أصدقائي.

Maged



Seleem

Thanks! Ramy, how do you get to school?

شكرًا رامى، كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة؟

I come by car with my dad.

آتي بالسيارة مع والدي.

Ramy



Seleem

Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل ركبت الأتوبيس أو مترو الأنفاق من قبل؟



Yes, if my dad is not in town, I take the bus. I like it.

نعم، إذا لم يكن والدي في المدينة، فأنا أستقل الأتوبيس، أحبه.

Ramy



Seleem

Why?

لماذا؟



We travel slowly and I can see the city.

نسافر ببطء ويمكنني أن أرى المدينة.

Ramy



Seleem

Do you ever come to school on foot?

هل سبق لك أن أتيت إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام؟



No, my house is very far from the school.

لا، بيتي بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.

Ramy



Seleem

Thanks! Have a nice day!

أشكرك! أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا!



You too!

وأنت أيضًا!

Ramy





Language Focus

Prepositions with means of transportation

حروف الجر مع وسائل النقل والمواصلات

on

eg.

foot



I go to school **on** foot.

أذهب للمدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

car

bus

train

by

ship

boat

plane

taxi

eg.



We travel to Aswan **by** train.

نسافر إلى أسوان بالقطار.



- When I travel **by plane**, I go **through the air**.

عندما أسافر بالطائرة، أمر عبر الجو.

- When I travel **by boat and ship**, I am **on the water**.

عندما أسافر بالقارب والسفينة، أكون على الماء.

- When I travel **by bus and car**, I am **on the road**.

عندما أسافر بالأتوبيس والسيارة، أكون على الطريق.

- When I travel **by train**, I move **on a rail** under the **vehicle**.

عندما أسافر بالقطار، أتحرك على سكة حديدية أسفل المركبة.



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I go to school (by) foot.
- 2 We travel (at) motorbike.
- 3 Trains move (in) a rail.
- 4 I love traveling with my family (on) plane.
- 5 I like traveling (in) bus when we are on the road.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 My favorite transportation is the
 a) boat b) plane c) car d) bike
- 2 I like watching the by boat.
 a) sea b) Nile c) lake d) waterfall
- 3 When you travel on a boat, you are on
 a) air b) home c) water d) land
- 4 The boat is a transportation.
 a) clean b) dirty c) sad d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We travel on water by
 a) ship b) train c) bus d) taxi
 القاهرة 2024
- 2 A: Which is your favorite? B: A train.
 a) game b) transportation c) subject d) book
 القاهرة 2024
- 3 I travel by I move on a rail under the vehicle.
 a) boat b) ship c) train d) foot
 من سيات 2024
- 4 The travels through the air.
 a) train b) car c) bus d) plane
 الجيزة - إدارة القرم 2024
- 5 We go to the to travel by plane.
 a) rail b) airport c) station d) water
 الجيزة - إدارة المحرانية 2024
- 6 When I travel by bus and , I am on the road.
 a) ship b) car c) boat d) plane
 SB
- 7 We go to school on foot. We always to school.
 a) cycle b) walk c) fly d) drive
 الشرقية - إدارة مدارس لدا 2024
- 8 Trains move on a/an
 a) road b) water c) air d) rail
 الشرقية - إدارة مشيول التعليمية 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

roads – take – make – foot – rails

القاهرة - إدارة ملبوليس التعليمية 2024

There are many types of transportation in my town. I live next to my school, so I often go there on (1)..... . When I go to the other side of the town, I (2)..... the bus. Buses move on (3)..... . When I travel to Cairo, I go by train. Trains move on (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Seleem is doing a class quiz about public transportation. He asks his friends how they go to their schools. Maged lives near the school, so he goes to school on foot. Ramy goes by car with his dad. He only takes the bus when his dad isn't there. Nada likes to take the bus to school because it is where she can see the city. She never goes to school by metro.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) schools b) transportation c) quizzes d) friends
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a) car b) taxi c) metro d) bus

Answer the following questions:

- Why does Maged go to school on foot?
.....
- How does Ramy go to school?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- I go to school (at) car. اميرة - إدارة الفهرس 2024
- I go to school (by) foot. It is near my house.
- I love traveling (by) water.
- When we travel by plane, we go (to) the air.
- Trains move (in) rails. الدولة 2 قوا 2024
- I love traveling with my family (on) plane.
- My brother goes to the market (in) bus. الشرقية - إدارة نيا 2024
- Cars and buses move (under) the road. البحر - قوا 2024

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Transportation"

love traveling – on the road – go to school by

كتاب
الصفحة
256



Road Safety السلامة على الطرق



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

helmet	خوذة	seat belt	حزام أمان	road signs	إشارات / لافتات الطريق
--------	------	-----------	-----------	------------	------------------------

Extra vocabulary

road	طريق	safety	أمان / سلامة	safe (adj.)	آمن
light	ضوء	left	يسار	right	يمين
camel	جمل	straight	مستقيم	safely	بأمان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
need يحتاج	needed	cross يعبر	crossed
turn ينعطف (يتجه)	turned	stop يتوقف	stopped
wait ينتظر	waited	park يركن (السيارة/ الدراجة)	parked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
mean يقصد / يعني	meant	swim يسبح / يعمد	swam
show يظهر / يوضح	showed	ride يركب	rode

Expressions and Phrases

in danger في خطر	cross the road يعبر الطريق
go straight يتجه للأمام (يذهب مباشرة)	wait for ينتظر لأجل



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) في كلمة (right) / (light) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Take care!

بعض الكلمات يختلف معناها طبقاً للنص:



e.g. right – park

We play in the park.

نلعب في الحديقة.

You can't park here.

لا يمكنك الوقوف هنا.

You are right.

أنت على حق.

Turn right.

انعصف يميناً.



2. Look, read, and notice:

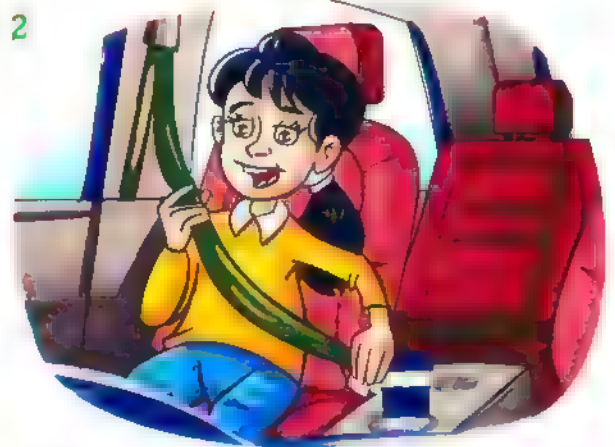
انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ

To be safe on the roads لكي تكون آمناً على الطرق



You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى خوذة على دراجتك.



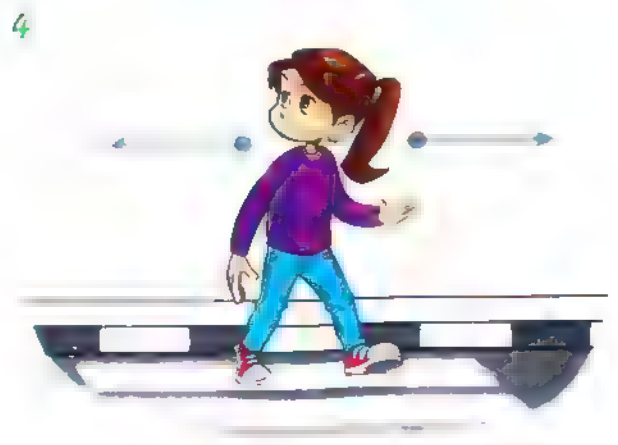
You need a seat belt in your car.

أنت بحاجة إلى حزام أمان في سيارتك.



You need a green light to cross the road.

أنت بحاجة إلى ضوء أخضر لعبور الطريق.



You need to look left and right.

يجب عليك أن تنظر إلى اليسار واليمين.

Road signs إشارات الطريق



There are sometimes camels on the road.

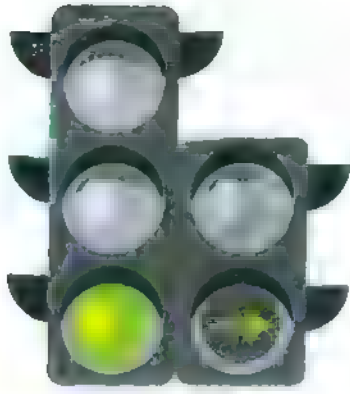
نوجد في بعض الأحيان جمال على الطريق.



You can't swim here.

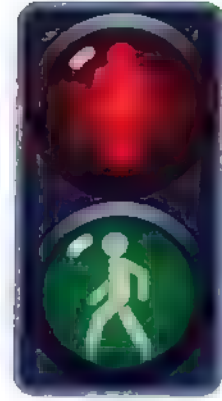
لا يمكنك السباحة هنا.

3



You can go straight and turn right.
يمكنك الذهاب مباشرة وتتعطف يمينًا.

4



Stop here and wait for a green light.
توقف هنا وانتظر الضوء الأخضر.

5



You can't ride your bike here.
لا يمكنك ركوب دراجتك هنا.

6



You can't park here.
لا يمكنك الوقوف هنا.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 You need a (belt – seat – helmet – road) on your bike.
- 2 You need a seat belt in your (train – car – boat – bike).
- 3 You need a/an (red – yellow – orange – green) light to cross the road.
- 4 We need a (safe – bad – dangerous – green) road.
- 5 You can't (cross – park – ride – need) your car here.



Language Focus

need

We use "need" when something is important or necessary.

نستخدم «يحتاج» عندما يكون هناك شيء مهم أو ضروري.

Subject (شخص) + need/s + noun (شيء)

e.g.



You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى خوذة على دراجتك.

We use "need to" and the infinitive (inf.) when something is important to do.

نستخدم «يحتاج إلى أن» وصيغة المصدر عندما يكون هناك شيء من المهم القيام به.

Subject (شخص) + need/s to + (inf.) (مصدر)

e.g.

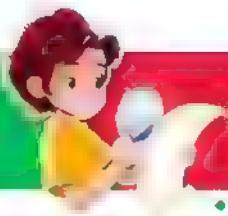


You need to look left and right.

يجب عليك أن تنظر يسارًا ويمينًا.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 You need to (be – am – is – are) careful on the road.
- 2 You (has – need – doesn't need – should) a helmet on your bike.
- 3 I need (look – to look – looking – looked) left and right.
- 4 Ahmed (need – needs – needed – needing) a seat belt in his car.
- 5 We (needs to – needs – need – need to) safe roads.
- 6 She needs to (sleep – slept – sleeps – sleeping) early.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- 1 It's important to be on the roads.
a) angry b) exited c) unsafe d) safe
- 2 You need a seat belt in your
a) home b) apartment c) car d) school
- 3 You can cross the road when the light is
a) yellow b) green c) red d) black
- 4 You need to look left and right before you the road.
a) cross b) sell c) describe d) build

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 You need to look left and
a) write b) right c) night d) light
- 2 Naglaa only crosses the road when the is green.
a) light b) night c) right d) road
- 3 My dad needs a in his car.
a) helmet b) camel c) seat belt d) sign
- 4 Look at the, you can't swim here.
a) park b) sign c) letter d) book
- 5 You need a boat to the river.
a) turn b) stop c) cross d) park
- 6 I need to wear a when I ride my bike.
a) shirt b) helmet c) jacket d) cap
- 7 You can go straight and then right.
a) take b) need c) turn d) make
- 8 Stop here and wait the green light.
a) for b) to c) of d) from

بذبة - أبوسوبر 2024

بذبة - إدارة مدينت الجديلة 2024

بذبة - إدارة 'ال' بربط 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

road – safe – left – light – red

When you ride a bike, you need a helmet. You also need a seat belt in your car. You need a green (1) to cross the (2) When you cross the road, you need to look (3) and right. We should be (4) on roads.



4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Ali needs to (is) more careful on the road. الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 2 We (need to) a green light to cross the road. الشرقية - إدارة بليس 2024
- 3 We need to (helping) everyone. بنى سويف - إدارة الزاوي 2024
- 4 You (need) eat healthy food.
- 5 You need to (wearing) a seat belt in a car. الشرقية - إدارة 13 مارس 2024
- 6 She .. (need to) do more research.
- 7 You need (in) look left and right to cross the road. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
- 8 You (need to) a seat belt in your car. الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير 2024
- 9 Do you need to ... (seeing) a doctor? الفيوم - إدارة طاعية 2024
- 10 You need a helmet (by) your head. البحر الأحمر 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 you can t swim here.
.....
- 2 my friend adham has a bike.
.....
- 3 we need safe roads
.....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

الشرقية - إدارة الناشر من رمضان 2024

"Road safety"

a helmet – green light – a seat belt

.....

.....

.....

.....



Story



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

careful (adj.)	حذر / حريص	road	طريق
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	crosswalk	ممر مشاة
shocked (adj.)	مصدوم	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف

Extra vocabulary

kind (adj.)	لطيف / عطوف	a young man	شاب صغير السن	city	مدينة كبيرة
together	معًا	middle	منتصف	too fast	بسرعة شديدة
scared (adj.)	خائف	hospital	مستشفى	street	شارع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
love	loved	walk	walked
call	called	follow	followed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
drive	drove	fall	fell
hurt	hurt	learn	learnt

Expressions and Phrases

Be careful on the road!	انتبه على الطريق!	in a hurry	على عجلة من أمره (مستعجل)
walk into	يمشي في	drive through	يقود عبر
fall over	يسقط أرضًا	call for	يستدعي / يطلب
feel very bad	يشعر بالسوء (بالذنب)	do wrong	يخطئ
do right	يفعل الصواب	listen for cars	ينتبه لأصوات السيارات

Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ed) أحيانًا ينطقان /t/ (ت) كما في (shocked).

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) في كلمة (sign) «silent» لا ينطق.

Be Careful On The Roads! كن حذرا على الطرق!



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind. Hani is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry.

مازن و داليدا أخ وأخت. إنهما يحبان مدرستهما. معلموهما لطيفون جدًا. هاني شاب صغير السن. يعمل في المدينة وينذهب إلى عمله بالدراجة البخارية. اليوم كان على عجلة من أمره.



The middle

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road.

Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk.

Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.

Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

في تلك الساعة، هاني سار بسرعة نحو عمله. هاني و داليدا مشوا معًا إلى المدرسة. هم ساروا في المشاة. هاني مشى إلى منتصف المشاة. هاني لم يوقف لأن كان يسير بسرعة. هاني سقط في منتصف المشاة. داليدا كانت خائفة، ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخيها.



The end

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg.

Hani called for an ambulance.

Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

توقف هاني ليقدر مساعدة. أراد مازن الذهاب إلى المدرسة، ولكن ساقه كانت مصدعة. طلب هاني المساعدة. مازن حاليًا في المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. هاني يشعر بأسوأ.

Check

- 1 How does Hani go to work?
- 2 Where is Mazen at the end of the story?



Language Focus

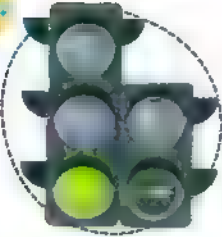
must

We use "must" or "mustn't" for strong advice.

نستخدم «must» أو «mustn't» لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Subject (فاعل) + must / mustn't + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر

e.g.



You **must** wait for the green lights before you cross the road.

يجب أن تنتظر الضوء الأخضر قبل أن تعبر الطريق.

e.g.



You **mustn't** run on roads.

يجب ألا تجرى على الطريق.



When we take notes, we don't write the complete sentences. We write important words.

عندما نقوم بتدوين الملاحظات، لا نكتب جملاً كاملة. نكتب كلمات مهمة.

e.g.

Note: listen for cars

Sentence: You must listen for cars.

Check

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (mustn't) listen to my teacher.
- 2 You must (follows) road signs.
- 3 You must (are) careful while crossing the road.
- 4 You (mustn't) wait for cars to stop before crossing the road.
- 5 You (must) eat in the library.
- 6 We must (finished) our work quickly.



Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



cr /kr/



crowd

مُجَمَّة



crash

يُصَدِّق



crosswalk

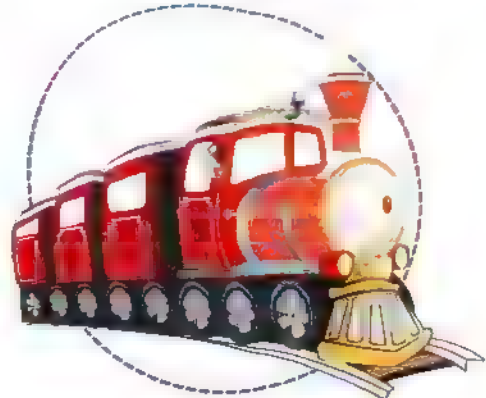
مُجَبِّر مَشَاة

tr /tr/



truck

شاحنة



train

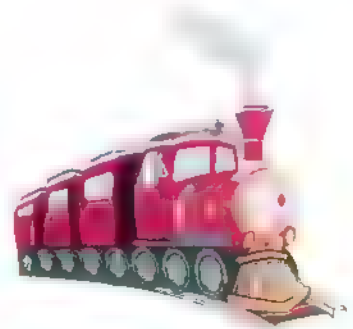
قطار

Diphthongs (long vowels)

الأصوات المركبة (حروف العلة الطويلة)

A diphthong is a vowel sound made by pronouncing two vowels quickly one after the other.

الصوت المركب هو صوت متحرك يتم إحرؤه عن طريق نطق حرفين متحركين بسرعة واحدًا تلو الآخر.



ai

/eɪ/

rain

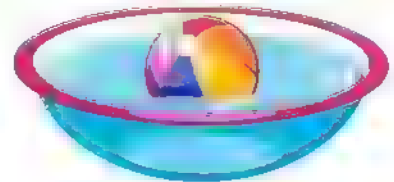
مطر

snail

حارون

train

قطار



oa

/oʊ/

boat

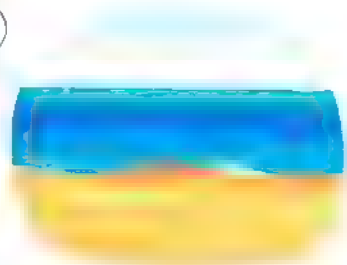
قارب

coat

معطف

float

تطفو



ea

/i:/

clean

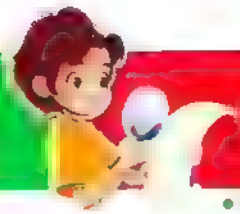
ينظف / يطف

dream

حلم / يحلم

sea

بحر



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farida goes to school
 a) by train b) by car c) by bus d) on foot
- 2 Farida's house is the school.
 a) in b) near c) on d) far
- 3 Farida crosses the road at the
 a) crosswalk b) park c) desert d) mountain
- 4 Farida never in the street.
 a) eats b) cleans c) runs d) sleeps

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When someone is hurt, we call for the :
 a) train b) plane c) bike d) ambulance
- 2 Hani was in a because he was late for work.
 a) road b) hurry c) snail d) dream
- 3 They cross the roads at the
 a) online b) crosswalk c) message d) password
- 4 You can't your bike here.
 a) dive b) drive c) ride d) go
- 5 She is She always looks left and right to cross the road.
 a) helpful b) useful c) careful d) shocked
- 6 Stop here and wait for a light to cross the road.
 a) red b) yellow c) green d) blue

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ambulance – hurry – lights – crosswalk – motorbike

Ali is a young man who works in the city. One day, Ali was late for work so he was in a (1)..... He drove his (2)..... fast. Omar and his sister Mona were walking to the (3)..... Ali couldn't stop. Omar fell over and Ali called for an (4)..... to help him.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Drivers and people who cross the roads should be careful. When we cross the roads, we should wait for the cars to stop. Yesterday, I walked with my friend Adel to school, then a man drove his car through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. The man hit Adel and he fell over. He hurt his leg. I called for an ambulance and took Adel to the hospital. The man felt sorry.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should wait for the cars to
a) walk b) stop c) work d) run
- 2 The man drove his car through the crosswalk too
a) well b) slow c) fast d) happy

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did the man feel when Adel was in hospital?

- 4 What mistake did the man make?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You must (follows) road signs. إحدى إدارة 2024
- 2 You (must) run on roads. إدارة للمرشدين 2024
- 3 You (mustn't) follow road signs. بنى سوييف - إدارة الواسطي 2024
- 4 She mustn't (sleeps) very late.
- 5 You must (to cross) the road at the crosswalk. إدارة ديروفا 2024
- 6 We must (wore) a seat belt in cars. إدارة إدارة الحرم 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 hani mustn't drive too fast

- 2 What must i do



Lesson 4



Air Pollution تلوث الهواء



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
electric buses	أتوبيسات كهربائية	rice straw	قش الأرز	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي

Extra vocabulary

dirty (adj.)	متسخ	London	لندن	England	إنجلترا
Shenzhen	شنجن (مدينة بالصين)	China	الصين	burning	حرق
crops	محاصيل زراعية	Paris	باريس	Copenhagen	كوبنهاجن
Denmark	الدانمارك	worried (adj.)	قلق	ideas	أفكار
subject	موضوع	son	ابن	asthma	مرض الربو
heating	جهاز التدفئة	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز
renewable (adj.)	متجددة	growth	نمو	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
breathe يتنفس	breathed	cough يكح	coughed
stop يتوقف	stopped	cycle يركب الدراجة	cycled
cover يغطي	covered	allow يسمح	allowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make يصنع	made	put يضع	put
drive يقود سيارة	drove	buy يشتري	bought

Expressions and Phrases

feel sick	يمرض	take a bus	يستقل الأتوبيس
First of all, ...	أولاً	cut the amount	يخفض مقدار (كمية)
a long way from	على مسافة بعيدة من	That's helpful!	هذا مفيد!



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous.



Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

Does this happen to you in your city or town? Is the air dirty or clean?

المدن بها الكثير من السيارات. السيارات تسبب تلوث الهواء. يضعون المواد الكيميائية في الهواء. لا يمكننا دائمًا رؤية المواد الكيميائية، لكنها خطيرة.

تلوث الهواء خطير جدًا بالنسبة لنا. عندما نتنفس الهواء الملوث، نسعل ونشعر بالمرض. هل هذا يحدث لك في مدينتك أو بلدتك؟ هل الهواء متسخ أم نظيف؟

Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.



تحاول بعض المدن وقف تلوث الهواء. في لندن، إنجلترا، الآباء لا يوصلون أطفالهم بالسيارة إلى المدرسة. يمشى الأطفال أو يذهبون إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة.

In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.



في شنغن، الصين، لديهم أتوبيسات كهربائية. هذه الأتوبيسات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء.

In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air.

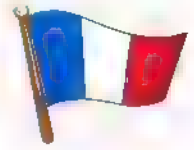
To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.



في الغربية، مصر، أراد المزارعون الحصول على هواء أنظف. للقيام بذلك، توقفوا عن حرق قش الأرز. استخدموا القش لصنع طعام لحيواناتهم وتغطية محاصيلهم.

In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city.

In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.



في باريس، فرنسا، لا يمكن سيرات الذهاب إلى بعض أجزاء من المدينة. في هذه الأماكن، يمكنك المشي أو ركوب الأتوبيس فقط.

In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than people and large parts of the city don't allow cars.



في كوبنهاغن، دنمارك، عدد الدراجات أكثر من عدد الناس، وأجزاء كبيرة من المدينة لا تسمح بالسيارات.

These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities.

Which idea do you like best?

هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لوقف تلوث الهواء في المدن. أي فكرة تفضلها أكثر؟

Check

1 Why is air pollution dangerous? **SB**

2 How did people in London stop air pollution?



3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Walker about air pollution.
Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

تحدث اليوم مع الدكتورة «هيلين واكر» عن تلوث الهواء. هل أنت قلقة من هذا الموضوع؟



Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

لأن أحد أبنائي يعاني من الربو الشديد وأعتقد أنه بسبب الهواء الملوث في مدينتنا. أردت أن أقول شيئاً ما لمساعدته ولأطفال الآخرين.

Helen



Interviewer



What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل للمساعدة في جعل الهواء أنظف؟



I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

لدى بعض الأفكار. أولاً، نحتاج إلى خفض مقدار استخدامنا لسياراتنا. يمكننا محاولة الشراء من المتاجر القريبة من منزلنا. يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشي إلى المدرسة.

Helen



Interviewer



But sometimes children live a long way from school.

لكن في بعض الأحيان يعيش الأطفال على مسافة بعيدة من المدرسة.

Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

إذا يمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ربما ركوب الأتوبيس.

Helen



Interviewer



Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

فكرة جيدة، العديد من المدارس لديها أتوبيسات. ما هي أفكارك الأخرى؟



Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power – renewable energy keeps the air clean!

حاول ألا يكون لديك مدفأة مكشوفة في المنزل. إذا كان الجو باردًا، استخدم جهاز التدفئة. واستخدم الطاقة المتجددة إذا استطعت، مثل الطاقة الشمسية - الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء!

Helen



Interviewer



Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

أوه، هذا مفيد. ماذا عن المزيد من الأشجار؟



Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

نعم، هذه فكرة ممتازة. نحن بحاجة لزراعة الأشجار. تقوم الأشجار بتنظيف الهواء لأنها تستخدم المواد الكيميائية لنموها من خلال عملية البناء الضوئي. كما أنها تجعل المدن تبدو جميلة وتمنحنا الظل في يوم حار!

Helen





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When we breathe polluted air, we and feel sick.
a) sleep b) laugh c) cough d) see
- Air pollution is for us.
a) good b) healthy c) helpful d) dangerous
- Dad goes to work with his in the same car.
a) mom b) friend c) grandpa d) sister
- I to school.
a) walk b) run c) cycle d) drive

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Buses make air pollution. They put into the air.
a) water b) woods c) stars d) chemicals
- Air pollution is very
a) good b) healthy c) dangerous d) useful
- Cars can make pollution.
a) water b) air c) soil d) sea
- We need to use more renewable energy, like power.
a) gas b) electric c) solar d) chemicals
- cars are excellent because they work with electricity.
a) Gas b) Solar c) Electric d) Fire
- Ali has because of the dirty air.
a) straw b) asthma c) shade d) heating
- Air pollution is very
a) good b) nice c) clean d) dangerous
- Farmers used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their
a) crops b) toys c) ideas d) bikes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

energy – bike – polluted – electric – pollution

Air pollution is dangerous. When we breathe (1)..... air, we cough and feel sick. Here are some ideas that can help us stop air (2)..... . You can go to school by (3)..... or the bus. We can plant more trees and use renewable .. (4)..... like solar power.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Cities have many cars. Cars cause air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. The chemicals are very dangerous. Some cities try to stop air pollution. In London, parents don't drive children to schools. Children walk or cycle to schools. In China, they use electric cars to stop air pollution. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) clean air b) snow c) air pollution d) stars
- 2 In London, children go to school by
 a) car b) bus c) train d) bike

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What makes air pollution?

.....

- 4 How does China try to stop air pollution?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 In Gharbia, egypt, farmers stopped burning rice straw

.....

- 2 what can we do

.....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Air Pollution"

ملفات
معدة
236

chemicals – dangerous – cough



Lessons 5 & 6

Writing & Project



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

energy-saving (adj.)	موفرة للكهرباء	lightbulbs	مصابيح	car-sharing	مشاركة السيارة
transportation	مواصلات	gas	بنزين	traffic	حركة المرور

Extra vocabulary

report	تقرير	apartment	شقة	trains	قطارات
balcony	بلكونيه / شرفة	cleaner (adj.)	أنقى	main heading	عنوان رئيسي
sub-heading	عنوان فرعي	paragraph	فقرة	slowly	بطء
important (adj.)	هام	fresh air	هواء نقي	breathing problems	مشاكل تنفس

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
use	used	share	shared
change	changed	increase	increased

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hear	heard	burn	burnt

Expressions and Phrases

do research	يقوم ببحث	on the balcony	في الشرفة
as a family	كعائلة	stop working	يتوقف عن العمل
put in	يركب (اللمبة)	car-free roads	طرق خالية من السيارات
from behind	من الخلف		

Youssef's report تقرير يوسف



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Introduction

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do.

استمعت الأسبوع الماضي إلى الدكتورة «هيلين والكر» تحدثت عن تلوث الهواء، لقد أحببت أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث، لقد تحدثت مع عائلتي حول ما يمكننا القيام به.



What we can do

• We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment.

• يمكننا الحصول على مصابيح موفرة للطاقة في شقتنا.

• We can use buses and trains more.

• يمكننا استخدام الأتوبيسات والقطارات أكثر.

• We can share a car with a friend sometimes.

• يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق في بعض الأحيان.

• We can walk and not always go by car.

• يمكننا المشي ولا نذهب بالسيارة دائماً.

• We can have many plants on our balcony.

• يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات في شرفتنا.

What we decided to do

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to her school.

We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony. When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm excited!

Youssef

قررتنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبي الآن للعمل مع صديقه في نفس سيارة. أمي تستقل الأتوبيس إلى العمل. هي لا تقود.

أنا أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. أختي نورا تمشي إلى مدرستها.

لدينا المزيد من النباتات في غرفة المعيشة وفي الشرفة. عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا تركيب مصابيح موفرة للطاقة.

أنا متحمس! يوسف،

Check

1 How does Mom go to work?

2 Why is he excited? **SB**

More ideas to stop air pollution

المزيد من الأفكار لوقف تلوث الهواء



3. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

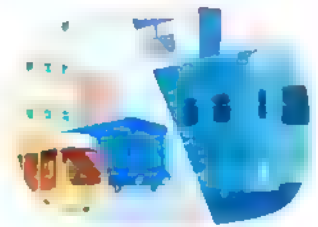
Don't burn rice straw.

لا تحرق قشور الأرز.



Increase public transportation.

زد من وسائل المواصلات العامة.



Have cleaner gas in cars.

احصل على بنزين أنظف في السيارات.



Have some car-free roads.

احصل على بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.



Travel on foot or by bike.

انتقل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.





Project



4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Road Safety Leaflet

نشرة السلامة على الطرق

ROAD SAFETY السلامة على الطريق

photo



main heading

sub-heading

Be safe on the road كن آمناً على الطريق

Use the crosswalks.

استخدم ممرات المشاة.

Walk slowly – don't run.

امش ببطء - لا تجر.



Watch the traffic

انتبه لحركة المرور

Listen for cars.

استمع لأصوات السيارات.

Don't cross from behind a car.

لا تعبر من خلف السيارة.



Read the road signs

اقرأ علامات الطريق

Read the road signs. They give you important information about the road.

اقرأ إشارات الطريق. تعطيك الإشارات معلومات مهمة عن الطريق.

paragraph



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When you are on the road, walk- don't run.
a) quickly b) slowly c) fast d) clearly
- 2 Be on the road.
a) safe b) dirty c) dangerous d) pollution
- 3 We use-saving lightbulbs to save electricity.
a) water b) gas c) juice d) energy
- 4 Mom the bus to work.
a) takes b) makes c) talks d) walks

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

share – dangerous – walk – lightbulbs – metro

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving (1) in our apartments. We can use public transportation, such as buses and the (2) Also, we can sometimes (3) a car with a friend. If you're going to a near place, you can(4)

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

We should do things to stop air pollution. We can use energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartments. We can use buses and trains more often. We can also have many plants on balconies. My family and I decided to make some changes to stop air pollution. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. My sister, Mona, walks to school because her school isn't far. We put plants in our living room and on our balcony.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about how to
 a) save money b) go to work c) stop air pollution d) plant trees
- 2 We can use energy-saving in our apartments.
 a) buses b) lightbulbs c) trains d) plants

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does Dad go to work now?

- 4 Why does Mona walk to school?

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we can share a car with a friend sometimes

- 2 She doesn t drive

- 3 don t burn rice straw.

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Ideas to stop air pollution"

- What causes air pollution?
- What can we do to stop air pollution?
- What should we put on our balconies?



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

rail	سكة حديد	ship	سفينة
airport	مطار	train	قطار
bus	حافلة	taxi	سيارة أجرة
boat	قارب	metro	مترو الأنفاق
plane	طائرة	water	هواء

Lesson (2)

safe	آمن	left	يسار
safety	أمان / سلامة	right	يمين
helmet	خوذة	camel	جمل
seat belt	حزام أمان	straight	مستقيم
light	صوء	road signs	لافتات الطريق

Lesson (3)

road	طريق	hospital	مستشفى
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	middle	متصف
crosswalk	ممر مشاة	shocked	مصدوم
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	scared	خائف

Lesson (4)

pollution	تلوث	rice straw	قش الأرز
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	photosynthesis	عمية لساء الصوئ
dangerous	خطير	dirty	متسخ
electric buses	أتوبيسات كهربائية	asthma	مرض الربو

Lessons (5 & 6)

energy-saving	موفرة للكهرباء	balcony	شرفة / بلكونة
lightbulbs	مصابيح	transportation	مواصلات
traffic	حركة المرور	fresh air	هواء نقي
apartment	شقة	important	هام

Language Focus

need

Subject (فاعل) + need/s + (noun) (اسم) ...

e.g. You need a helmet on your bike.

Subject (فاعل) + need/s to + (inf.) (المصدر) ...

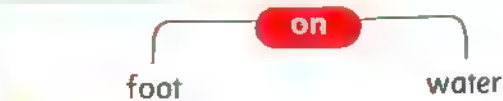
e.g. You need to look left and right.

must

Subject (فاعل) + must / musn't + (inf.) (المصدر) ...



e.g. You must wait for the green lights before you cross the road.



e.g. I go to school on foot.



e.g. We travel to Aswan by train.



e.g. You musn't run on roads

Unit 11

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....	سفينة	.....	قارب
.....	طائرة	.....	مترو الأنفاق
.....	قطار	.....	مطار
.....	مطار	.....	سكة حديد
.....	طريق	.....	الهواء/ الجو

Lesson 2

.....	آمن	.....	حزام الأمان
.....	ضوء	.....	خوذة
.....	يمين	.....	يسار
.....	مستقيم	.....	جمل
.....	ينتظر	.....	لافتات الطريق

Lesson 3

.....	ممر المشاة	.....	دراجة بخارية
.....	في عجلة من أمره	.....	سيارة إسعاف
.....	خائف	.....	مصدوم
.....	شاب صغير السن	.....	مستشفى
.....	حذر	.....	طبيب

Lessons 4, 5 & 6

.....	تلوث	.....	مواد كيميائية
.....	أتوبيسات كهربائية	.....	حطير
.....	الطاقة الشمسية	.....	مشاكل تنفس
.....	موفرة للكهرباء	.....	مرص الربو
.....	حركة المرور	.....	تقرير
.....	عملية البناء الضوئي	.....	متجددة

WRITING TIME

تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about transportation:

- 1 There are many means of public transportation in my town/city.
- 2 There are + اسم المواصلات that go/move on + طريقة الانتقال.
- 3 When we go by + وسيلة المواصلات, we are on + طريقة الانتقال.

"Transportation"

There are many means of public transportation in my city. There are cars and buses that move on roads. When we go by trains or metros, we are on rails. When we go by planes, we go through the air. When we go by boats or ships, we are on water.

How to write about being safe on the road:

- 1 It's important to be safe on the road.
- 2 You need + أدوات أمان + in/on + your bike/car.
- 3 You need to + إرشادات عبور الطريق.

"Road safety"

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a green light to cross the road. You need a seat belt in your car. You need to look right and left before you cross the road. Use the crosswalk and don't cross from behind a car.

How to write ideas to stop air pollution:

- 1 There are + عوامل تلوث الهواء + and cause air pollution.
- 2 Air pollution is dangerous because + مخاطر تلوث الهواء.
- 3 We can + طرق تقليل تلوث الهواء.

"Air pollution"

There are many cars that put chemicals in the air and make air pollution. Air pollution is dangerous because when we breathe polluted air, we cough, and feel sick. We can share a car with another person. We can walk or cycle to school. We can put more plants on our balconies too.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

taxi – plane – train – boat – car – ship – bus

- 1 When I travel by, I go through the air.
- 2 When I travel by and, I am on the water.
- 3 When I travel by and, I am on the road.
- 4 I travel by around the city.
- 5 When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by, I move on a rail under the vehicle.

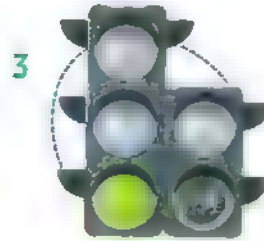
2 Look at the signs and complete:



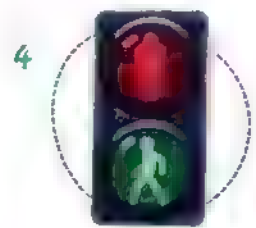
There are sometimes on the road.



You can't here.



You can go straight and right.



..... here and wait for a green light.

3 Put the words in the box in the correct column:

road signs – factories – crosswalk – seat belts – helmet – chemicals – smoke – too much traffic

Road safety

Air pollution



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

١) استمع للمقطع (أ) ثم أجب: إدارة فاقوس 2024

- 1 Sami likes
a) running b) walking c) swimming d) reading
- 2 Emad goes to work by
a) train b) plane c) ship d) car
- 3 Ali goes to work by
a) boat b) bike c) motorbike d) bus
- 4 Eman doesn't like to be on
a) water b) land c) street d) ground



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ships and boats move on
a) water b) air c) roads d) land
- 2 Don't forget to wear your to protect your head.
a) ambulance b) helmet c) seat belt d) motorbike

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

power – healthy – idea – sick – share

Air pollution is dangerous. When we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel (1) We need to stop air pollution. We can drive less or (2) a car with another person. It's also helpful to use more solar (3) Planting more trees is a good (4) as well.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Nancy lives in a big city with her family. There are many cars where she lives. These cars put chemicals in the air and make air pollution. Nancy thinks it is dangerous because when people breathe polluted air, they cough and feel sick. Nancy thinks her dad should share a car with a friend to go to work. Her mom can take the bus to work. And her sister Nada should walk to school because her school is near the house.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about pollution.
a) water b) air c) sand d) soil
- 2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a) cars b) chemicals c) people d) ideas

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What should Nancy's dad do?
.....
- 4 Why should Nada walk to school?
.....



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 We travel (at) motorbike.
- 2 You need to (creates) a password.
- 3 We (mustn't) clean our house.
- 4 You must (told) your parents if you need help.

الفاخرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024

بني سويف 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

2

people have electric buses in china.

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Transportation in my town"

- How do you go to school?
- What's your favorite transportation?
- How do you travel?

الفاخرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024



Assess your progress

★★★

< 50%

«Steady progress»

50 - 64%

«Good progress»

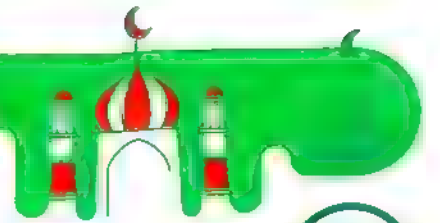
65 - 84%

«Satisfactory progress»

85 - 100%

«Well done!»

100



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 We need to be (sad – hungry – careful) on the roads.
- 2 We must cross the road at the (supermarket – crosswalk – park).
- 3 We need a (green – red – yellow) light to cross the road.

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

need – get – helmet – bike

Omar : How do you to school?

Adel : I come to school by

Omar : What do you when you use your bike?

Adel : I need a

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 You need (look – to look – looked) left and right to cross the road.
- 2 When I travel by (train – plane – bus), I go through the air.
- 3 We can get (wind – cloud – solar) power from the sun.
- 4 You must (follow – follows – following) road signs.
- 5 They cross the roads at the (crosswalk – message – password).

APRIL REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر أبريل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Social is when we use computers and other devices.
a) media b) movie c) photo d) number
- 2 I created a to get information. الحيرة: 2024
a) research b) chat c) secret d) password
- 3 I can my friends in photos online. صريف - إدارة ناصر 2024
a) tag b) play c) study d) move
- 4 I into a library website. ننى صريف 2024
a) logged b) chatted c) created d) did
- 5 You can photos on social media.
a) share b) cut c) lake d) copy
- 6 Chameleons have amazing eyes, and they can all around.
a) eat b) see c) fly d) hear
- 7 It's to play computer games for a long time.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
- 8 can change their color.
a) Birds b) Fish c) Chameleons d) Tigers
- 9 I send a to my friend every week. إدارة الشباب 2024
a) color b) dream c) message d) room
- 10 It's that people can bully you online. 20
a) scary b) fun c) happy d) interesting
- 11 Adel used his to log into the school's library.
a) chat b) message c) password d) website
- 12 We need to right and left when we cross the road.
a) sleep b) look c) give d) eat
- 13 You need to wear a in your car.
a) skirt b) helmet c) seat belt d) tie
- 14 You need a helmet on your المادرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
a) bike b) train c) car d) plane
- 15 They go to school bus. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
a) by b) of c) at d) with

- 16 When we travel by boat or ship, we are on
 a) air b) clouds c) road d) water
- 17 You should a helmet when you ride your bike.
 a) wear b) walk c) win d) wonder
- 18 You need a light to cross the road.
 a) blue b) red c) green d) pink
- 19 I go to school foot. It is near my house.
 a) by b) on c) in d) of
- 20 When I travel by , I go through the air.
 a) bus b) train c) plane d) car

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

research – devices – homework – world – have

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the (1) People can use computers and other (2) to share their ideas. Children can use social media to (3) fun. Scientists can use social media to do(4)..... .

food – friends – number – strong – secret

It is important to stay safe online. You should keep your password (1) You shouldn't tell everyone your phone (2) You shouldn't make new (3) online with people you don't know. You should use a (4) password. Don't bully people online.

share – dangerous – walk – lightbulbs – metro

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving (1) in our apartments. We can use means of transportation such as buses and the (2) Also, we can sometimes (3) a car with a friend. If you're going to a near place, you can (4)

travel – rides – by – plane – on

My name is Hana. I go to school (1) foot. I love walking. My school is near my house. My father goes to work (2) car. My brother (3) his bike to school. My mom takes a taxi. We usually (4) to Aswan by train.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You should (uses) social media safely.
- 2 We should (keeping) our school clean.
- 3 You (shouldn't) wear a helmet on your bike.
- 4 You (shouldn't) be safe online.
- 5 You (should) tell your password to anyone.
- 6 Children shouldn't (eats) too many sweets.
- 7 They (shouldn't) be respectful.
- 8 You shouldn't (gives) your password to anyone.
- 9 You (shouldn't) eat healthy food.
- 10 I (shouldn't) listen to my teacher.
- 11 I love traveling (by) water.
- 12 You should (wearing) a seat belt in your car.
- 13 You (needs) to follow road signs.
- 14 I love traveling (by) water.
- 15 They often travel (on) car.
- 16 You need to (eats) healthy food.
- 17 Who comes to school (at) bus?
- 18 You need (of) look left and right, when you cross a road.
- 19 I go to work (by) foot.
- 20 You must (wearing) a helmet on the bike.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 We travel to aswan by train
- 2 is the air clean in Egypt
- 3 how did you travel to school yesterday
- 4 I m doing research about chameleons
- 5 hoda is doing a project on bats
- 6 some cities try to stop air pollution

Unit

12

Fiction Reader

Story

Unit 12: The Village Library



Story Overview

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

- read and understand a story.
- enjoy reading in English.
- identify characters in a story.
- identify key events and vocabulary in a story.

• مهية، قصة سمعوا منهم قارئاً عن

يقرأ ويهم قصة.

• ستمتع بقراءة، اللغة الإنجليزية

يتعرف على الشخصيات في قصة.

• يتعرف على الأحداث المهمة والكلمات في القصة.

Dalia Saves The Village!

Title
العنوان

داليا تنقذ القرية!



By Nicola Gardner

Author
المؤلف

What's up?

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. The crops aren't growing well in the village. There is a problem with the irrigation canal in the village. Dalia wants to help people in the village. She contacts all the people there on social media asking for help. They decide to help her. They manage to solve the problem together so the villagers can grow crops again. Dalia tells the villagers more about her research to grow different crops. She advises them to grow wheat. Everything is better now in the village. Dalia decides to work with agriculture when she grows up.

تعمل داليا في قرية في مصر، وهي تدرس بحثاً حول المحاصيل في مصر. لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد في القرية، يوجد مشكلة في قناة الري في القرية. تريد داليا مساعدة الناس في القرية. تتحدث مع جميع الناس هناك عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. يقررون مساعدتها. يتمكنون من حل المشكلة معاً حتى يتمكن القرويون من زراعة المحاصيل مرة أخرى. تخبر داليا القرويين بمزيد من أبحاثها عن زراعة الحبوب. يخبرونها بمزيد من أبحاثها عن زراعة الحبوب. يخبرونها بمزيد من أبحاثها عن زراعة الحبوب. يخبرونها بمزيد من أبحاثها عن زراعة الحبوب.



Vocabulary



1. Listen, point, and say:

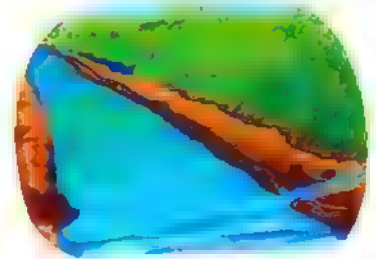
استمع، أشر وقل:



wheat قمح



crop محصول



irrigation canal قناة الري



irrigation الري



wheat flour دقيق قمح



maize ذرة



village



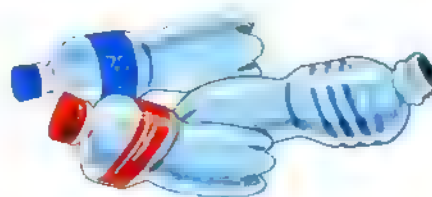
baladi bread خبز بلدي (عيش بلدي)



cookies بسكويت (كوكيز)



trash قمامة



plastic bottles زجاج بلاستيكية



trash bags أكياس القمامة

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.)	شيق	important (adj.)	مهم
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ (شهى)	well	بشكل جيد
problem	مشكلة	simple (adj.)	بسيط
call (v.)	ينادى / يتصل	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
get (v.)	يحصل على	meet (v.)	يقابل
main square	الميدان الرئيسى	grandparents	أجداد
tea	شاي	bring (v.)	يوصل / يحضر
household things	أغراض منزلية	deep (adj.)	عميق
polluted (adj.)	ملوثة	again	مرة أخرى / مجددًا
land	أرض	sell (v.)	يبيع
produce (v.)	ينتج	fields	حقول
awesome (adj.)	رائع	changes	تغيرات
proud (adj.)	فخور	agriculture	الزراعة

Expressions and Phrases

do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى	do research about	يقوم بعمل بحث عن
to like (something) best	يحب (شيئًا) أكثر من أى شيء آخر	look sad	يبدو حزينًا
help with	يساعد فى	get together	يتجمع
in the center of	فى وسط	blocked with	مسدود بـ
clear the trash	يزيل (يتخلص من) القمامة	fill ... with	يملأ ... بـ...
come back	يعود	become easier	يصبح أسهل
have a plan	لديه خطة	in a few years	فى خلال سنوات قليلة
walk around	يتجول	grow up	يكبر



Story Elements



2. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Characters

الشخصيات

Main characters



Dalia



Gameela (Dalia's mom)
جميلة (والدة داليا)



Waleed (Dalia's dad)
وليد (والد داليا)



Tarek (Dalia's brother)
طارق (أخو داليا)



the villagers
أهل القرية



Dalia's grandma
جدة داليا



Dalia's grandpa
جد داليا

Setting

المكان



Dalia's house

منزل داليا



the village

القرية



the main square

الميدان الرئيسي



the irrigation canal

قناة الري



Dalia's grandparents' house

منزل أجداد داليا

Plot

الحبكة



The Beginning

Dalia discusses the irrigation problem in the village with her family. She wants to help the village. She calls everyone in the village on social media to tell them about the problem.

تناقش داليا مشكلة الري في القرية مع عائلتها.
تريد داليا مساعدة القرية، تتصل داليا بجميع سكان
القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لتحذيرهم عن
المشكلة.



The Middle

Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal is blocked with trash. The villagers clear the trash. The water is clean now in the canal.

تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة، قناة الري
مسدودة بالقمامة. يزيل أهل القرية القمامة.
المياه نظيفة الآن في القناة.



The End

The water comes back to the village. People can grow crops again. They grow more different crops like wheat. Everything is better now in the village.

تعود المياه إلى القرية. يستطيع أهل القرية زراعة
المحاصيل مجددًا، يزرعون الكثير من المحاصيل
المتنوعة مثل القمح. كل شيء أصبح أفضل الآن
في القرية.



3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Egyptian village



Dalia lives in a **village** in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting. Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes **baladi bread** best. Which is your favorite?

نعيش داليا في قرية في مصر. دلت ليلة، نقوم بعمل واجب المنزل على الكمبيوتر. نقوم بعمل بحث عن بعض المحاصيل في مصر مثل القمح والذرة والأرز، وهذا شيق للغاية. يعتبر القمح محصولاً مهماً في بلدنا حيث سنستخدمه في صناعة الخبز. ننظر داليا لصور خبز مصري شهى. تحب داليا الخبز البلدى أكثر من أى نوع آخر. ما الخبز المفضل لديك؟



What food does Dalia like best?



Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. "The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no **irrigation**," says Gameela to Dalia. "We need to help everyone in the village with their crops." Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, "But what can we do?" Dalia says, "It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on **social media**. We need to help our village."

تحدث حميدة بولود داليا بن وبيد والدها، الذي يبدو حزيناً. «لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد في القرية. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بالمياه ولا يوجد ري». «يحب عيب مساعدة جميع في القرية في محاصيلهم». يقول طارق أخو داليا: «لكن ماذا يمكن أن نفعل؟» تقول داليا: «إنه أمر سهل للغاية. دعنا نتواصل مع كل فرد في قرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. نحن نحتاج إلى أن تساعد قريتنا».

Check

What is the village's problem?



Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the **main square**. A lot of villagers say they can help.

تحصل سائلة الرياغة، الموية من نهر النيل، من قناة الرياغة. لكن الرياغة لم تعمل. داليا تخبر الجميع في القرية بهذا المشنة من خلال ديسا
انواعا لاجتماع ثم يتفق بالجمعية من اسرار الرئيس بشان المشنة من الرياغة. ثم يذهبون مع داليا لاجتماع مع الرياغة.

Check

How does Dalia tell everyone about the **problem**?



The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

في اليوم التالي يجتمع الجميع في وسط القرية. يأتي بعض الأفراد سيرا على الأقدام والبعض الآخر باستخدام الدراجة. يأتي بعض الأشخاص باقارب أو بسيارة من قرية أخرى يقدموا المساعدة. الجميع منحمسون لحل مشكلة. يسقى الجميع في منزل أجداد داليا. تقدم لهم جدة داليا الشاي والبسكويت (الكوكيز).

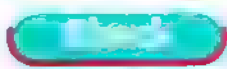
Check

Where do the villagers get together?

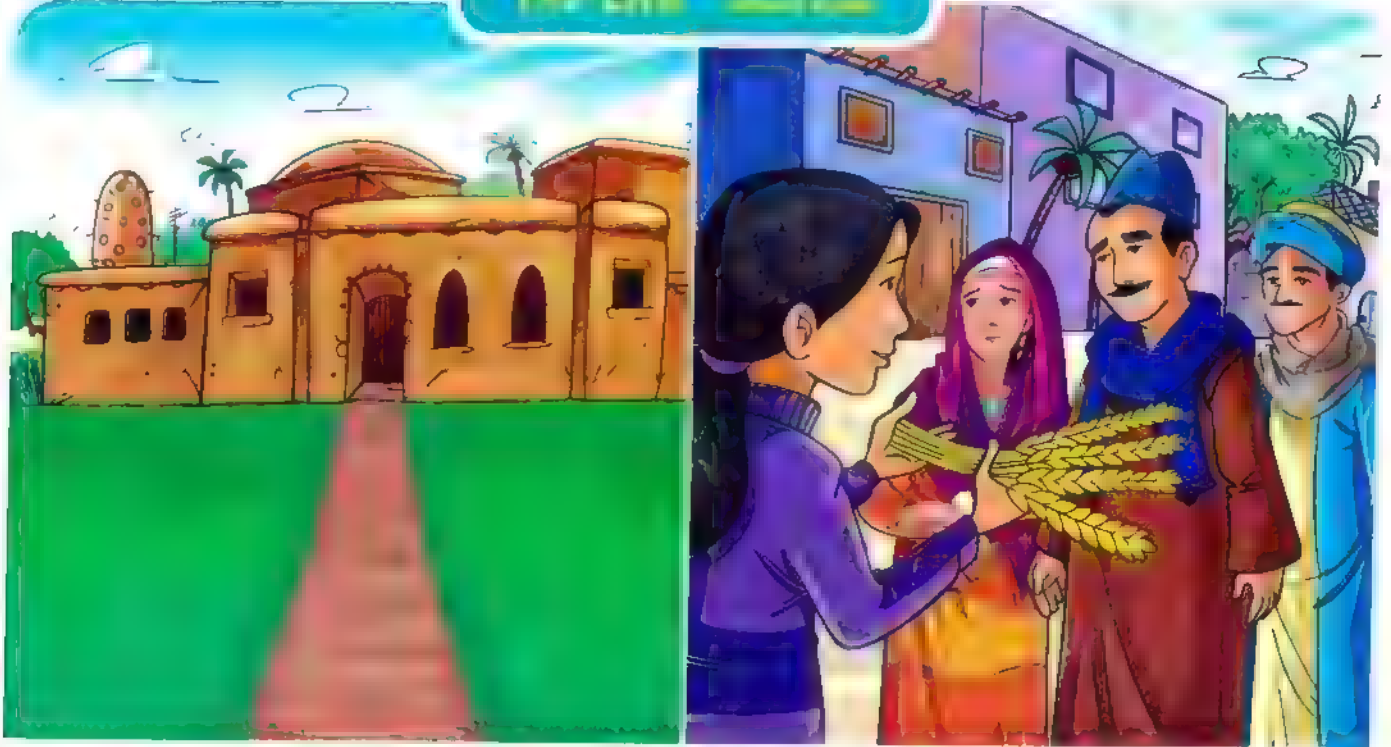


Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is **blocked** with trash – plastic bottles and **household** things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, “We need to start work and clean the water.” The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn’t polluted.

ذهب داليا وأهل القرية لمشاهدة المشكلة. كان السيل الذي يجلب المياه إلى القرية ممتلئاً بالزبال. هناك زبال منزلي وعلب بلاستيكية وبعض النباتات في الماء. قال طارق، “نحن بحاجة لبداية العمل ونظيف المياه.” المياه ليست عميقة جداً وبدأوا في تنظيف الزبال. ملأوا 20 كيساً قمامة بالقمامة الموجودة. الآن، المياه غير ملوثة.



What do the villagers do to clear the trash?



The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

Dalia has a **plan**. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat – she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea – they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

تعود مياه نيل القرية وتمز المحاصيل مجدداً. الجميع سعداء للغاية يستطيعون زراعة الغذاء على أراضيهم ويستطيعون بيع الفاكهة والخضروات خاصة بهم بشيء آخر. تصح جيدهم شهر. كبر بعض محاصيل بسبب جيدة جداً. 'لدى' راتيا حصة. تعتقد أن أهل القرية يمكنهم إنتاج المزيد من الغذاء. فعينهم بحرية زراعة قمح. تحبهم دائماً عن نخبها. وتقول إن القمح ينمو بشكل جيد جداً في مصر وهو جيد لصناعة خبز سيد ذكعتك بعض سر أهل القرية بأكبره. فيبدأون بزراعة القمح في بعض حقولهم.

Check

What do the villagers start to grow in their fields?



From the wheat, they can make flour. From the flour, they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her **awesome** cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

من القمح، يمكن صنع الدقيق. من الدقيق، يمكن صنع الخبز المصري. يمكن صنع المزيد من الكوكيز الرائعة الخاصة بها. يصنع أهل القرية الخبز والبسكويت (الكوكيز) ليتمكنوا من بيعها إلى القرى الأخرى.

Check

Why do the villagers make bread and cookies?



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with agriculture to help other people with their crops.

في خلال سنوات قليلة، أصبح كل شيء أفضل في قرية تحول. داليا حو. قرية وتفتي نظرة على التغييرات. هي فحورة جداً عندما
تكرستعش في مجال زراعة تساعد الآخرين في محاصيلهم.

Check

Why does Dalia work with agriculture?

Story Summary ملخص القصة



4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

There is a problem in the village where Dalia lives.

توجد مشكلة في القرية التي تعيش فيها داليا.

The problem المشكلة



What is the problem in the village?

ما هي المشكلة الموجودة في القرية؟

The crops aren't growing well. There is a problem with the irrigation canal. It's blocked with trash.

لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد. توجد مشكلة مع القناة الري. إنها مسدودة بالفضلات.

The process الطريقة



What does Dalia do?

ماذا تفعل داليا؟

Dalia tells everyone in the village about the problem on social media. She meets them in the main square to help with the problem.

تخبر داليا جميع أهل القرية عن المشكلة عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. تقابل داليا أهل القرية في الميدان الرئيسي لحل المشكلة.



What do the villagers do?

ماذا يفعل أهل القرية؟

The villagers clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with trash.

يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. يقومون بملء 20 كيسًا من أكياس القمامة بالقمامة الموجودة.

The solution/conclusion الحل (نهاية المشكلة)

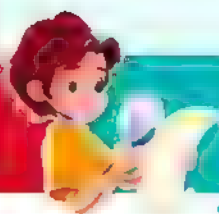


What is the result?

ما هي النتيجة؟

The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

تعود المياه مرة أخرى إلى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مجددًا.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Dalia lives in a in Egypt.
a) city b) village c) river d) desert
- 2 She is doing her homework on her
a) phone b) laptop c) computer d) TV
- 3 She is doing research about in Egypt.
a) crops b) food c) people d) animals
- 4 Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian
a) cakes b) cheese c) wheat d) bread

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sara is her homework.
a) making b) doing c) playing d) having
- 2 We grow lots of in our country.
a) bread b) cookies c) crops d) water
- 3 He doesn't smile. He sad.
a) looks b) makes c) grows d) works
- 4 It's very , I can do it.
a) difficult b) hard c) wrong d) simple
- 5 The crops are not growing well because we have no
a) food b) irrigation c) social media d) problem
- 6 People who live in a village are called
a) animals b) scientists c) tourists d) villagers
- 7 We meet on Fridays. We get every weekend.
a) back b) off c) together d) up
- 8 The irrigation canal that brings the water is with trash.
a) blocked b) excited c) worked d) cleaned
- 9 We cleared the trash. The water isn't
a) clean b) polluted c) good d) beautiful
- 10 My brother helped me to fill the bottles water.
a) at b) of c) with d) in
- 11 My grandma makes cakes. I like them.
a) bad b) horrible c) trash d) delicious
- 12 Farmers grow vegetables and fruit in some of their
a) folders b) fields c) bread d) cakes
- 13 Farmers live in a
a) village b) town c) city d) country
- 14 People contact each other on
a) canal b) village c) social media d) crops
- 15 I'm playing with my friends. I'm very
a) sad b) unhappy c) bad d) excited



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

social media – irrigation – Nile – villagers – village

Dalia's family gets water from the(1)..... . But the(2)..... canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on(3)..... , then meets everyone in the main square. A lot of(4)..... say they can help.



Read the sentences and correct the mistake:

- 1 Dalia lives in a city in Egypt. ()
- 2 Dalia's family gets water from the lake. ()
- 3 The irrigation canal that brings the water is blocked with toys. ()
- 4 The water comes back to the village and the groups grow again. ()
- 5 When Dalia grows up, she works with desert to help other people with their crops. ()



Read the text and answer the questions:

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. The crops aren't growing well in the village. There is a problem with the irrigation canal in the village. Dalia wants to help people in the village. She contacts all the people there on social media asking for help. They decide to help her. They manage to solve the problem together so the villagers can grow crops again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Dalia's
a) family b) school c) village d) homework
- 2 There is a problem with the canal in the village.
a) irrigation b) food c) social d) crops

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is Dalia's research about?
- 4 Why does Dalia contact all the villagers on social media?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 blocked – The canal – with – is – trash.
- 2 in – lives – a village – Dalia – in Egypt.
- 3 social media – everyone – on – Dalia – calls.
- 4 the village – to – comes – The water – back.

Final Revision and Exams



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each 2 Units
- 11 Final Exams
- 2 Al-Azhar Exams
- امتحان دمج 1

Units 7 & 8



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 7

city	مدينة كبيرة	building	مبنى	river	نهر
forest	غابة	desert	صحراء	village	قرية
oasis	واحة	mountain	جبل	interesting	شيق / مثير للاهتمام
center	مركز	branch	فرع	reptiles	زواحف
memories	ذكريات	trucks	شاحنات	curious	فضول
excited	متحمس	quiet	هادئ	space	مكان
ground	أرض	metal	معادن	inside	داخل
hole	حفرة	pleased	مسرور	delighted	مبتهج
mice	فئران	moral	الدرس الأخلاق (العبرة)	the country	الريف
seeds	بذور	pretty	جميل	bright	لامع
lights	أصواء	loud	صاحب	scared	خائف
sounds	أصوات	smells	روائح	voice	صوت (بشري)
nervous	عصبي / متوتر	backpack	حقيبة الظهر	gate	بوابة
electricity	الكهرباء	shopping mall	مول تجاري	toys	ألعاب
gray	رمادي	pants	ننطلون	neighbors	جيران
noisy	مرعج	shoe store	متجر أحذية	modern	حديث

Unit 8

a packet of	عبوة من	a bar of	قالب من	a carton of	علبة من
cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)	chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
candies	الحلوى	soap	الصابون	milk	لبن
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a slice of	شريحة من	a piece of	قطعة من
pizza	بيتزا	bread	خبز	lemonade	عصير ليمون
meat	لحم	party	حفلة	thirsty	عطشان
poem	قصيدة شعر	octopus	أخطبوط	dish	طبق / وحة
trip	رحلة قصيرة	deep	عميق	lovely	جميل
meal	وجبة	healthy	صحي	dessert	تحلية
frozen	مجمد	yogurt	زيادي	photos	صور فوتوغرافية
soon	قريبًا	jellyfish	قنديل البحر	sunset	غروب الشمس
Islamic month	شهر إسلامي (هجري)	kahk	كحك	mosque	جامع
Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي	festival	مهرجان / عيد	after	بعد
Muslim	مسلم	different	مختلف	Shawwal	شهر شوال
delicious	لذيذ	nuts	مكسرات	sugar	سكر
honey	عسل	bakery	مخبز	celebration	احتفال
salted fish	سمك مملح	colored	ملون	special	مميز
cousins	أولاد العم	aunt	عمة / خالة	uncle	عم / خال
huge	صخم	salad	سلطة	new life	حياة جديدة



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali could climb the high last week.
a) moon b) earth c) mountain d) oasis
- 2 There are a lot of trees in the
a) river b) desert c) building d) forest
- 3 My dad was happy and
a) sad b) bad c) excited d) sick
- 4 The city is very busy and
a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) free
- 5 The village was but now it is noisy.
a) big b) quiet c) loud d) young
- 6 I went to the area to buy some clothes.
a) shopping b) library c) smoking d) kids
- 7 My sister was a history project at school.
a) playing b) doing c) driving d) looking
- 8 We on a blue shirt and gray pants for school.
a) find b) put c) look d) have
- 9 The Nile River has two
a) beaches b) seas c) branches d) mountains
- 10 The dog was scary. I was when I saw it.
a) happy b) delighted c) nervous d) excited
- 11 I bought three of soap.
a) bars b) bottles c) slices d) cartons
- 12 We drank two of milk.
a) pieces b) slices c) cartons d) bars
- 13 We need a of water.
a) bar b) bottle c) slice d) piece
- 14 Salma lives in a tall in the city.
a) mountain b) building c) tree d) forest
- 15 The lives in the sea.
a) octopus b) lion c) camel d) chicken
- 16 Bananas and frozen yogurt are healthy
a) deserts b) desserts c) fish d) vegetables

أسبوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

الشاخنة - إدارة الشراية 2024

- 17 Eid Al-Fitr is a festival when we eat
 a) noodles b) meat c) salted fish d) kahk
- 18 I went to the to buy some cookies.
 a) hospital b) library c) bakery d) beach
- 19 Kahk are delicious
 a) cake b) cookies c) candies d) juice
- 20 She looks a bit She is sick.
 a) brown b) yellow c) blue d) green



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



home – important – market – Egypt – river

The Nile provides us with water and food. The Nile has two branches in
 (1) The Nile is the longest (2) in the world. That's like traveling
 to the center of the earth. The Nile is a (3) for different kinds of fish and
 turtles. The Nile is very (4) It brings life to Egypt.



pants – home – nervous – gate – school

I remember my first day at school. I was very (1) , I didn't want to go
 to (2) I put on a blue T-shirt and gray (3) I carried my
 backpack. At the school (4) , I said goodbye to my dad and mom.



songs – birthday – see – friends – bought

Yesterday was a very special day. It was my (1) I had a party. All my
 (2) and neighbors came to my party. They gave me wonderful presents.
 Mom and Dad (3) a cake for me. We sang a lot of (4)
 We were very happy. It was a nice day.



packet – bar – pizza – carton – milk

Yesterday was too hot. I drank one (1) of juice. My sister ate
 a (2) of cookies. We bought a (3) of chocolate. We went
 home and had delicious slices of (4)



Unit 7

The Past Simple Tense

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي في وقت معين.

أفعال منتظمة:

1. Regular verbs:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) المصدر + ed/d/ied ...

e.g. He **played** tennis last week.

e.g. We **studied** English yesterday.

2. Irregular verbs:

أفعال غير منتظمة:

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. I **found** the book.

e.g. She **bought** a new bag.

Negative Form:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. She **didn't watch** TV last week.

Yes/No Question:

A. Did + subject + (inf.) المصدر في الفعل ...?

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

did.

didn't.

e.g. A: Did she visit her grandpa?
B: Yes, she did.

e.g. A: Did they go to the cinema?
B: No, they didn't.

Wh- Question:

A: Wh- word كلمة لاستفهام | did | subject | (inf.) المصدر في الفعل ...?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

e.g. A: What did you buy?
B: I bought a new car.

e.g. A: Where did they go?
B: They went to the park.

Verb to "be" in the Past Simple

فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative Form:

I / He / She / It + **was** ...I **was** very excited yesterday.We / They / You + **were** ...My parents **were** in Cairo last month.

Negative Form:

I / He / She / It + **was not (wasn't)** ...Salma **wasn't** sad yesterday.We/ They/ You + **were not (weren't)** ...We **weren't** happy at the party.yesterday **أمس** / ago **منذ** / last **الماضي** / in the past **في الماضي**

Unit 8

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
see	يرى	saw		go	يذهب	went	
swim	يعوم	swam		forget	ينسى	forgot	
eat	يأكل	ate		cut	يقطع	cut	
sing	يغني	sang		come	يأتي	came	
catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught		say	يقول	said	
buy	يشترى	bought		run	يجري	ran	
fly	يطير	flew		have	يملك / يتناول	had	
hear	يسمع	heard		make	يصنع	made	
give	يعطي	gave		am/is	يكون (للمفرد)	was	
write	يكتب	wrote		are	يكون (للمجمع)	were	
throw	يرمي	threw		drink	يشرب	drank	



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I to school last week.
a) walk b) walks c) walking d) walked
- 2 Grandpa a box of his memories when he was eight years old.
a) bury b) buries c) buried d) burying
- 3 They didn't their grandparents yesterday.
a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
- 4 There no cars in the past.
a) was b) were c) is d) are
- 5 A: How did you feel on your first day of school? B: I nervous.
a) is b) am c) did d) was
- 6 Omar sleep last night.
a) don't b) isn't c) doesn't d) didn't
- 7 My parents me a beautiful present on my last birthday.
a) give b) gave c) giving d) gives
- 8 A: What you eat? B: I ate an apple.
a) was b) were c) do d) did
- 9 She come to school yesterday.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't
- 10 They played football together
a) now b) tomorrow c) tonight d) yesterday
- 11 I had my swimming test yesterday. I 50 meters.
a) swam b) swim c) swims d) swimming
- 12 We some old photos. They were amazing.
a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees
- 13 We "Happy Birthday" to our teacher this morning.
a) song b) sings c) sang d) singing
- 14 Where did he ?
a) travel b) travels c) traveling d) traveled
- 15 A: Did you go to school this morning? B: Yes, I
a) do b) didn't c) don't d) did

- 16 I went to the beach and I a jellyfish.
a) see b) seeing c) saw d) sees
- 17 Hend two bars of chocolate last night.
a) buy b) bought c) buying d) buys
- 18 Last weekend, we to Damietta to see our grandma.
a) go b) went c) going d) gone
- 19 Grandpa a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish!
a) eat b) catch c) caught d) catching
- 20 We fun. We were happy.
a) has b) had c) have d) having



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 What subject (do) you study yesterday?
- 2 Ahmed (visit) his uncle last week. التيمم - إدارة إيلسا 2024
- 3 Yesterday, they (play) football in the club.
- 4 When did your friend (arrives)? الجيزة - إدارة الممراتية 2024
- 5 They didn't (goes) to school last week. القاهرة - إدارة الاسطرية 2024
- 6 We (not play) football yesterday. الجيزة 2024
- 7 A: Did you ride your bike yesterday? B: No, I (don't).
- 8 I didn't travel to Alex (next) week.
- 9 The village (were) very quiet in the past. إدارة مغروط 2024
- 10 What did you (bought) yesterday?
- 11 I lived in Aswan when I (am) six years old.
- 12 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We (was) happy.
- 13 I (don't) see Aya yesterday.
- 14 What did Magdy (wore) yesterday?
- 15 Grandpa (were) eight years old when he buried his box.
- 16 She (leave) home early yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الوابلي 2024
- 17 Nada (win) the race last Friday.
- 18 We (see) a show yesterday.
- 19 He (fall) and hurt his leg last week.
- 20 I (have) a birthday party last month.

Units 9 & 10



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 9

Pass the parcel	لعبة نقل الطرود	Musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	Hide and seek	لعبة العمبضة
wedding	زفاف	traditional	تقليدي	ready	جاهز
popular	مشهور / محبوب	exciting	شيق / ممتع	wide	واسع
Cheese rolling	لعبة دحرجة الجبن	travels	سفرات / رحلات	weird	عريب
wonderful	رائع	traditions	تقاليد	hill	تل / هضبة
funny	مضحك	strange	غريب	envelope	طرف
amount	كمية / مقدار	messy	فوضوي	monsters	وحوش
silly	سخيف / غبي	mud	طين	La Tomatina	مهرجان الطماطم
alive	حي (على قيد الحياة)	Ful Medames	فول مدمس	Basbousa	بسبوسة
karate	كاراتيه	special	مميز	country	دولة / بلد
history	تاريخ	rich	غني	culture	ثقافة
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	garlic	ثوم	sweet	حلو
semolina	دقيق السميد	syrup	شراب السكر	helpful	متعاون
hospitable	مضياف	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	authors	مؤلفون
information	معلومات	invitation	دعوة	address	عنوان
missing	مفقود	road	طريق	school yard	ساحة المدرسة

Unit 10

message	براسل / رسالة	chat	محادث / محادثة	password	كلمة المرور
do research	يجري بحثًا	log in	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول	chameleon	حرباء
website	موقع إلكتروني	amazing	مدهل	presentation	عرض تقديمي
respectful	محترم / متسم بالاحترام	safe	آمن	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
creative	مبدع	personal information	معلومات شخصية	bullying	التنمر
online	عبر الإنترنت	devices	أجهزة	ideas	أفكار
thoughts	آراء / أفكار	pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات
interesting	مثير	scary	مخيف	secret	سر / سري
strong	قوي	stupid	غبي	quickly	بسرعة
late	متأخر	ugly	قبيح	neighbor	جار
computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر	problem	مشكلة	unhealthy	غير صحي
restaurant	مطعم	son	ابن	apartment	شقة
together	معًا	team	فريق	leaflet	منشور
poster	ملصق	reason	سبب	screen	شاشة
problem	مشكلة	prize	جائزة	headings	عناوين



on Vocabulary Units 9 & 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A/An writes movies and stories.
a) player b) author c) visitor d) doctor
الشرقية - إدارة متبا القمع 2024
- 2 To play "Pass the parcel", we need
a) food b) chairs c) presents d) seeker
- 3 The player who the present keeps it.
a) unwraps b) eats c) reads d) wraps
- 4 When we play "Musical chairs", we run the chairs.
a) in b) around c) on d) under
- 5 We need a place to play "Hide and seek".
a) small b) dark c) white d) wide
- 6 I'm of the history of my country.
a) famous b) proud c) kind d) read.
الشرقية - إدارة متبا القع 2024
- 7 Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with
a) cheese b) beans c) syrup d) water
المدارة 2024
- 8 In La Tomatina, everybody is in red tomatoes.
a) found b) put c) covered d) won
- 9 There isn't enough water in the It's a dry place.
a) desert b) forest c) river d) mountain
بنى سويف 2024
- 10 People in Egypt are very to visitors.
a) silly b) boring c) hospitable d) scary
الإسماعيلية 2024
- 11 I hurt my hand. It is
a) helpful b) beautiful c) pain d) painful
- 12 Basbousa is very
a) salty b) sweet c) bad d) fast
المنية 2024
- 13 You must be when you cross the road.
a) careful b) caring c) care d) cared
- 14 Remember to be Don't copy information.
a) noisy b) painful c) helpful d) respectful
- 15 Are you making a/an about chameleons?
a) password b) website c) presentation d) information
- 16 Social media has pros and
a) reasons b) verbs c) prizes d) cons
البحر الأحمر - إدارة الفرقة 2024

- 17 A: Did you do your on your tablet? B: Yes, I did.
 a) library b) research c) color d) dress
- 18 I like to use media.
 a) special b) social c) gifts d) calm
- 19 We can ideas and thoughts on social media.
 a) log in b) contact c) share d) bully
- 20 I played with my friends.
 a) food b) games c) jobs d) drink



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

players – south – snows – green – desert

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90% of Egypt is a (1) , but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it's (2) and beautiful. There are mountains in the (3) and east of Egypt. It even (4) in the Sinai region.

B

mix – delicious – bad – culture – beans

اللقية - إدارة ميسر 2024

Egypt is famous for its rich (1) and delicious dishes. Ful Medames is a famous Egyptian dish. Egyptian people ate it thousands of years ago. It's (2) cooked slowly and served with lots of olive oil and garlic. You can (3) it with lemon juice, onions, and salt. It's very (4) .

C

food – friends – number – strong – secret

معاذ - إدارة د. الطحطاوي 2024

It is important to stay safe online. You should keep your password (1) . You shouldn't tell everyone your phone (2) . You shouldn't make new (3) online with people you don't know. You should use a (4) password. Don't bully people online.

D

research – devices – homework – world – have

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the (1) . People can use computers and other (2) to share their ideas. Children can use social media to (3) fun. Scientists can use social media to do (4) .



Unit 9

A) The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1. Regular verbs:

أفعال منتظمة:

Subject (...) + (inf.) ... + (ed/d/ied) ...

e.g. We celebrated Ahmed's birthday yesterday.

2. Irregular verbs:

أفعال غير منتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. Eslam bought a new car last week.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجرى	ran	fall	يسقط	fell
win	يفوز	won	fly	يطير	flew	give	يعطي	gave
tell	يخبر	told	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقي (يرمي)	threw	wear	يرتدي	wore	buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made	forget	ينسى	forgot	go	يذهب	went
come	يأتى	came	write	يكتب	wrote	bring	يجلب/ يحضر	brought

B) Making adjectives by adding (-ful)

يمكن تكوين الصفة بإضافة (-ful) إلى نهاية الاسم أو الفعل.

noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care	يعتني	careful	حريص	pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون	wonder	يعجب	wonderful	رائع
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد	color	لون	colorful	ملون
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل				

Unit 10

Giving advice:

إعطاء النصيحة:

should

We use "should" to talk about what we think is right to do.

نستخدم «يجب أن» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الصحيح القيام به.

Subject (الفاعل) + should + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر



I should turn my phone off at night.

يجب أن أطفئ هاتفي ليلاً.

e.g. You should keep your password secret.



shouldn't

We use "shouldn't" to talk about what we think is wrong to do.

نستخدم «يجب ألا» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الخطأ القيام به.

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (المصدر في المصدر)



I shouldn't use my phone late at night.

يجب ألا أستخدم هاتفي في وقت متأخر من الليل.

e.g. You shouldn't share your photos with people you don't know.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Last week, Ali his uncle.
a) visit b) visits c) visited d) visiting
- 2 The book was It gave me the information I needed.
a) use b) uses c) to use d) useful
- 3 Nada her friend at the festival last month.
a) meet b) meets c) meeting d) met
- 4 Hala's dress is We all love it.
a) colorful b) color c) coloring d) colors
- 5 He hurt his leg. It was
a) pain b) paining c) painful d) pains
- 6 I looked up and birds, dragons, and monsters.
a) see b) sees c) seeing d) saw
- 7 They pushed the cheese and hundreds of people after it.
a) ran b) runs c) running d) run
- 8 They a new bridge last year.
a) build b) builds c) building d) built
- 9 The window was open and a bird into the room.
a) fly b) flew c) flies d) flying
- 10 I didn't my keys.
a) find b) finds c) found d) finding
- 11 We should proud of our country.
a) be b) am c) is d) are
- 12 Children should playing after one hour.
a) stop b) stopped c) stopping d) stops
- 13 You spend many hours on computers and tablets. It's unhealthy.
a) are b) should c) shouldn't d) can
- 14 You should your personal information secret.
a) keep b) keeps c) keeping d) kept
- 15 If you have a problem, you tell your parents.
a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) do

- 16 You help your family and friends.
a) can't b) am c) shouldn't d) should
- 17 We keep our school clean.
a) should b) need c) shouldn't d) needs
- 18 You drive too fast.
a) must b) need c) shouldn't d) should
- 19 Children shouldn't too many sweets.
a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate
- 20 We bully people online.
a) should b) need c) are d) shouldn't



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 He (have) a party last week. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 2 Yesterday, we (go) to the club. بنى سويف 2024
- 3 She has a (color) dress.
- 4 The painting was really (beauty). الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024
- 5 The boat trip was (wonder).
- 6 She (drink) some juice at the party yesterday.
- 7 She didn't (go) up early yesterday.
- 8 Last week, they (see) some old videos.
- 9 Rana (wear) a nice dress last night.
- 10 I hurt my leg. It's very (pain).
- 11 This website is very (use).
- 12 Children shouldn't (drank) much coffee. الشرقية 2024
- 13 We shouldn't (used) our phones late at night.
- 14 You should (keeping) your password secret. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
- 15 I should (helping) my friends.
- 16 You should (eats) healthy food.
- 17 I'm very (care) when I go online.
- 18 You (shouldn't) stay safe online. الجيزة 2024
- 19 I (should) give my password to anyone. الفيوم 2024
- 20 You shouldn't (sharing) your personal information online.



Unit 11

rail	سكة حديد	station	محطة	safe	آمن
airport	مطار	vehicle	مركبة	road	طريق
bus	أوتوبس	land	أرض	helmet	خوذة
boat	قارب	public	عام	seat belt	حزام أمان
plane	طائرة	late	متأخر	light	ضوء
left	يسار	safety	أمان / سلامة	hospital	مستشفى
right	يمين	motorbike	دراجة بخارية	middle	متنصف
camel	جمل	crosswalk	ممر مشاة	shocked	مصدوم
straight	مستقيم	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	scared	خائف
safely	بأمان	pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
dangerous	خطير	rice straw	قش الأرز	dirty	قذر
electric buses	أوتوبسات تعمل بالكهرباء	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي	asthma	مرض الربو
shade	ظل	energy-saving	موفرة للكهرباء	balcony	شرفة / بلكونة
lightbulbs	مصابيح	traffic	حركة المرور	fresh air	هواء نقي
apartment	شقة	important	هام	truck	شاحنة

Unit 12 (Story)

village	قرية	wheat	قمح	irrigation canal	قناة الري
flour	دقيق	maize	ذرة	baladi bread	خبز بلدي
cookies	بسكويت	trash	قمامة	plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية
interesting	شيق	important	مهم	delicious	لذيذ
problem	مشكلة	simple	بسيط	call	ينادي / يتصل
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	main square	الميدان الرئيسي	household things	أغراض منزلية
deep	عميق	polluted	ملوثة	produce	ينتج
fields	حقول	awesome	رائع	changes	تغيرات
proud	فخور	agriculture	الزراعة	blocked with	مسدود بـ



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Cars go on
a) rails b) air c) water d) roads
- 2 I can't travel by I don't like traveling on water.
a) trains b) ships c) cars d) planes
- 3 You need a on your bike.
a) hat b) cap c) seat belt d) helmet
- 4 You can't your bike here.
a) ride b) drive c) build d) look
- 5 When you the road, look left and right.
a) make b) park c) build d) cross
- 6 You can go straight and right.
a) ride b) turn c) build d) find
- 7 My grandma is very She always gives me sweets.
a) dangerous b) kind c) sad d) boring
- 8 When I saw the lion, I was
a) hungry b) scared c) beautiful d) delicious
- 9 We called the to help the sick woman.
a) school b) bank c) ambulance d) bakery
- 10 Trains move on a/an
a) road b) water c) rail d) air
- 11 It's important to be on the road.
a) angry b) excited c) unsafe d) safe
- 12 Renewable energy keeps the air
a) dirty b) clean c) polluted d) dangerous
- 13 Cars put into the air and cause air pollution.
a) chemicals b) water c) solar power d) bikes
- 14 The chemicals in the air are
a) nice b) healthy c) safe d) dangerous
- 15 My dad has a in his car to drive safely.
a) chair b) seat belt c) helmet d) bike
- 16 We plant trees to give us on sunny days.
a) tea b) heat c) shade d) ideas

روم ٢٠٢٤

الإدارة - إدارة التدريب ٢٠٢٤



- 17 Air pollution is very dangerous for people who have
 a) food b) asthma c) water d) money
- 18 The polluted air is
 a) dirty b) clean c) worried d) healthy
- 19 My grandpa is a farmer. He works with
 a) agriculture b) computers c) clothes d) festivals
- 20 When I up, I want to be a doctor.
 a) stand b) grow c) look d) get
- 21 Wheat, maize, and rice are
 a) people b) devices c) signs d) crops



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



share – dangerous – walk – lightbulbs – metro

دمياط 2024

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving (1) in our apartments. We can use means of transportation such as buses and the (2) Also, we can sometimes (3) a car with a friend. If you're going to a nearby place, you can(4).....



seat belt – helmet – cross – left – wear

القاهرة 2024

We need to be safe on the roads. We must wait for the green light and listen for cars before we (1) the street. We must look right and (2) Then we cross the road at the crosswalk. We need a (3) in our cars and a(4)..... on our bikes. We must follow road signs.



roads – through – transportation – rails – on

There are many forms of (1) in my city. There are cars and buses that move on (2) When we go by trains or metros, we are on (3) When we go by planes, we go (4) the air. When we go by boats or ships, we are on water.



travel – rides – work – plane – walking

أسيوط 2024

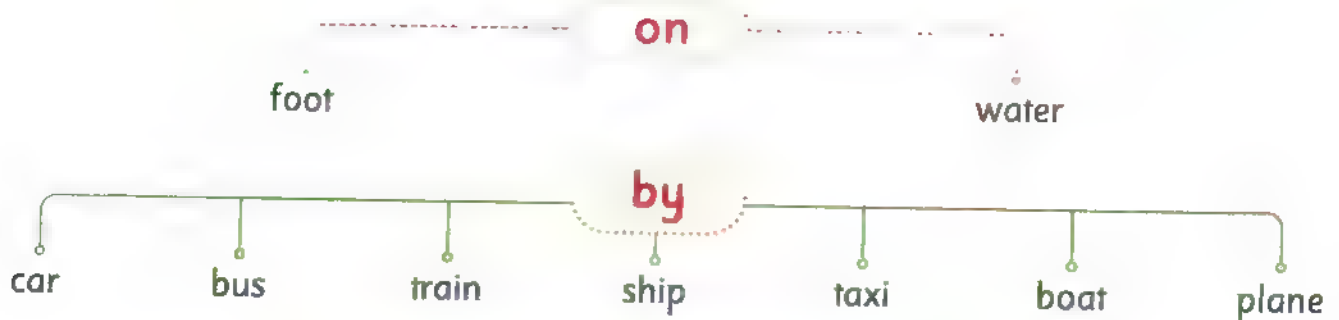
My name is Hana. I go to school on foot. I love (1) My school is near my house. My father goes to (2) by car. My brother (3) his bike to school. My mom takes a taxi. We usually (4) to Aswan by train.



Unit 11

A) Prepositions with means of transportation

حروف الجر مع وسائل النقل والمواصلات



B) need / need to يحتاج / يحتاج أن

نستخدم «need» عندما يكون هناك شيء مهم أو ضروري.

Subject (فاعل) + **need/s** + noun (اسم) ...e.g. She **needs** a green light to cross the road.Subject (فاعل) + **need/s to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ...e.g. They **need to** wait for the bus.

C) must / mustn't يجب / لا يجب

نستخدم «must» أو «mustn't» لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Subject + **must / mustn't** + (inf.) ...e.g. She **must** stop here and wait for a green light.e.g. You **mustn't** cross the road when the light is red.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 She needs to a helmet on her bike.
a) wear b) wears c) wore d) wearing
- 2 I need much water.
a) drink b) drinks c) drank d) to drink
- 3 We travel to Aswan train.
a) in b) on c) to d) by
- 4 You listen to your parents.
a) can't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) must
- 5 You need new shoes.
a) buy b) buys c) to buy d) buying
- 6 You must your room.
a) clean b) to clean c) cleans d) cleaning

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You must (follows) road signs.
- 2 You (must) run on roads.
- 3 I go to work (by) foot.
- 4 You need (in) look left and right to cross the road.
- 5 We travel (at) motorbike.
- 6 We need to (ate) healthy food.
- 7 She traveled to Cairo (in) bus.
- 8 You need to (creates) a password.
- 9 We travel on water (at) boat.
- 10 You need to (wore) a jacket. It's very cold outside.
- 11 We (need to) a green light to cross the road.
- 12 I hurt my leg. I need to (went) to the hospital.
- 13 I love traveling with my family (on) plane.
- 14 Cars and buses move (under) the road.
- 15 You need to (wearing) a seat belt in a car.
- 16 I love traveling (in) water.
- 17 She (need) a new dress for the party.
- 18 You must (to cross) the road on the crosswalk.
- 19 You need to (going) straight.
- 20 We (must) eat or talk in the library.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
sound	يبدو	sounded		guess	يخمن	guessed	
decide	يقرر	decided		check	يفحص / يراجع	checked	
live	يعيش	lived		cross	يعبر	crossed	
wonder	يتعجب	wondered		start	يبدأ	started	
wait	ينتظر	waited		bury	يدفن	buried	
prepare	يجهز	prepared		cover	يغطي	covered	
stay	يقيم	stayed		remember	يتذكر	remembered	
walk	يمشي	walked		carry	يحمل	carried	
study	يذاكر	studied		cry	يبكي / يصرخ	cried	
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated		play	يلعب	played	
want	يريد	wanted		fast	يصوم	fasted	
pray	يصلّي	prayed		happen	يحدث	happened	
love	يحب	loved		decorate	يزين	decorated	
stop	يتوقف	stopped		wrap	يغلف	wrapped	
join	يضم	joined		need	يحتاج	needed	
count	يعد	counted		close	يغلق	closed	
wish	يتمنى	wished		push	يدفع	pushed	
continue	يستمر	continued		pull	يسحب	pulled	
change	يغير	changed		cook	يطبخ	cooked	
chat	يحدث	chatted		create	ينشئ	created	
plan	يخطط	planned		message	يراسل	messed	
talk	يتكلم	talked		copy	ينسخ	copied	
tag	يصع علامة / يشير إلى	tagged		share	يشارك	shared	
accept	يوافق	accepted		contact	يتواصل	contacted	
ask	يسأل	asked		bully	يتنمر	bullied	
solve	يحل	solved		agree	يوافق	agreed	
interview	يحرى مقابلة	interviewed		answer	يجيب	answered	
travel	يسافر	traveled		need	يحتاج	needed	
turn	يسعطف	turned		pollute	يلوث	polluted	
park	يركن	parked		call	يتصل / ينادي	called	
follow	يتبع	followed		breathe	يتنفس	breathed	
cough	يكح / يسعل	coughed		allow	يسمح	allowed	
increase	يزيد	increased		use	يستخدم	used	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
bring يُحضِر	brought	know يعرف	knew
think يعتقد / يفكر	thought	choose يختار	chose
grow up يَمو	grew up	dig يحفر	dug
say يقول	said	find يجد	found
give يعطي	gave	come يأتي	came
catch يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught	run يجرى	ran
sit يجلس	sat	learn يتعلم	learnt
drive نفوذ سيارة	drove	have يمتلك / يتناول	had
feel يشعر	felt	eat يأكل	ate
drink يشرب	drank	swim يَعم / يسبح	swam
see يرى	saw	sing يعنى	sang
buy يشتري	bought	sleep ينام	slept
spend يقضى	spent	throw يلقى / يرمى	threw
hold يمسك	held	keep يحتفظ بـ	kept
put يضع	put	hide يختبئ	hid
seek يبحث	sought	become يصبح	became
understand يفهم	understood	hurt يؤذى / يؤلم	hurt
win يفوز	won	wear يرتدى	wore
do يفعل	did	get يحصل على	got
write يكتب	wrote	meet يقابل	met
go يذهب	went	ride يركب	rode
fall يسقط / يقع	fell	hear يسمع	heard
burn يحرق	burnt	cut يقطع	cut



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 My father says that his mom and dad drove cars.
a) toy b) modern c) electric d) gas
- 2 Gas cars were very
a) quiet b) noisy c) good d) clean
- 3 The town had a shopping area, but it was very
a) far b) new c) old d) modern
- 4 My dad worked in a bookstore on
a) Sundays b) Mondays c) Tuesdays d) Saturdays



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Don't information. Find ideas and write your own words.
a) make b) copy c) read d) do
- 2 We must respect the when we play.
a) rides b) roles c) rules d) ropes



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

games – bully – homework – night – personal

When I am online, I am very careful. I can talk to my friends and family. I should keep my (1) information secret. I can play (2) I can find information for my (3) I should turn my phone off at (4)



Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Last week, we had a very special party. It was my mother's birthday. My mom was 40 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. There was lots of food. I played games with my cousins. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and drank a carton of orange juice. We ran and threw a ball. We were happy. It was a special day.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My mother was years old.
a) sixty b) fifty c) forty d) eighty
- 2 I drank a carton of juice.
a) apple b) pineapple c) guava d) orange



Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did they have a special day?
- 4 Who came to celebrate?



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 We (find) a metal box in the ground last year.
- 2 Students should (studies) hard.
- 3 She goes to the cinema (on) bus.
- 4 I hurt my leg. It's very (pain).



Punctuate the following:

2

how do you go to school



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A trip to the sea"

..... last week – Alex – enjoyed



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) smallest c) longest d) widest
- 2 That's like traveling to the center of the
a) earth b) sky c) moon d) sun
- 3 The Nile has branches in Egypt.
a) three b) two c) five d) one
- 4 The Nile crocodile is one of the largest
a) insects b) fish c) birds d) reptiles



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The crocodile is and scary.
a) huge b) nice c) sad d) happy
- 2 I played with my cousins.
a) foods b) games c) jobs d) drinks



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

secret – accept – play – password – careful

There are some rules we should follow when we use social media. When you use social media, you should be (1) You should (2) to be friends only with people you know. You should keep your password (3), you shouldn't give your (4) to anyone who asks.



Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) food b) snow c) air pollution d) stars
- 2 In England, children go to school by
a) bikes b) cars c) planes d) trains



Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do cars make air pollution?
- 4 What does China do to stop air pollution?



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 You should (going) to bed early.
- 2 I (buy) a present for my friend yesterday.
- 3 Do you want a slice (on) cake?
- 4 Eating too much chocolate is (healthy).



Punctuate the following:

2

we have a great culture in Egypt



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Chameleons"

..... interesting – color – eyes



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 is a Muslim festival.
a) Christmas b) Eid Al-Fitr c) Sham El-Nessim d) Shawwal
- 2 The month before Eid is called
a) Shawwal b) Ramadan c) April d) March
- 3 In Ramadan, Muslims during the day.
a) run b) walk c) study d) fast
- 4 People don't eat or drink until
a) morning b) sunset c) afternoon d) night



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 She usually has three of cheese for breakfast.
a) bars b) bottles c) pieces d) cartons
- 2 The Nile is the river.
a) widest b) longest c) shortest d) tallest



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

stand – out – chairs – run – stops

My favorite party game is "Musical chairs." If there are 6 players, you only need 5
(1) The players play some music and (2) around the chairs.
When the music (3), everyone sits down. The players without chairs
are (4)



Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of spring; we can do lots of things during this celebration. We can play in the parks, color eggs, go on a picnic, and eat salted fish. Sham El-Nessim is a festival for Egyptians. Egyptians get together to have fun and celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of
 a) winter b) summer c) autumn d) spring
- 2 We color during Sham El-Nessim.
 a) apples b) eggs c) candies d) cakes

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do we eat during Sham El-Nessim?
- 4 Why do Egyptians get together during Sham El-Nessim?



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 Last week, they (see) some old videos.
- 2 He wants a (packet) of soap.
- 3 We need to (looking) left and right.
- 4 They often travel (on) car.



Punctuate the following:

2

how do you go to school



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Air pollution"

..... dangerous – chemicals – cough





Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The Nile gives us to drink and grow food.
a) milk b) juice c) water d) tea
- 2 The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) longest c) thinnest d) smallest
- 3 The Nile has branches in Egypt.
a) one b) two c) three d) four
- 4 The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and
a) turtles b) lions c) monkeys d) foxes



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 I ate a of cake.
a) bottle b) bar c) slice d) carton
- 2 The dress is It's amazing.
a) careful b) helpful c) colorful d) painful



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

happy – swim – park – yogurt – delicious

When it is hot, I go out. I like to drink orange juice. It is very (1)
My brother likes to go to the beach. I like to go to the beach, too. We (2) in
the sea. We eat frozen (3) We feel very (4) at the end of the day.

Read the text and answer the questions:

When we get together with our friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play party games. Musical chairs is an interesting game. You can run, but be ready to sit. You need four chairs when you have five players. Play some music and run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is out; take away one chair and play again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about party
 a) cakes b) juice c) cats d) games
- 2 When the music stops, everyone
 a) sleeps b) runs c) sits down d) walks

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do children do when they are together?
- 4 How many chairs do you need for 5 players?



Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (play) football yesterday.
- 2 You (shouldn't) help your mother.
- 3 When did you (visited) your grandpa?
- 4 I like the park very much. It is (wonder).

Punctuate the following:

we travel to Aswan by train

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

“Computer games”

many hours – do their homework – unhealthy



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 To play "Pass the parcel," wrap a
 a) present b) game c) chair d) box
- 2 We need to play "Pass and parcel."
 a) book b) ball c) music d) basket
- 3 Players give the present to the person.
 a) next b) out c) seeker d) last
- 4 The player who the present keeps it.
 a) wraps b) unwraps c) covers d) hides



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We need to create a to log into the school website.
 a) message b) chat c) password d) research
- 2 We are a history project in school about our town.
 a) making b) doing c) driving d) playing



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

supermarket – bottles – slices – soap – bought

Hana and her family went to the (1) yesterday. They (2) many things. Hana bought two (3) of milk. Hana's mom bought two bars of (4), two pieces of cheese, and a packet of cookies.





Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Last week, Samy visited his grandpa in Tanta, where he lives. He took the train there. When he arrived, Grandpa met him at the train station. Samy's grandpa was very happy and excited. He showed Samy around the city. Grandpa told Samy that Tanta was very quiet when he was young. There weren't many cars or shops. Now, life is different. There are many cars on the roads. There are many shops and big shopping malls, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Samy took the to Tanta.
a) car b) taxi c) train d) bus
- 2 Samy's Grandpa was very
a) sad b) happy c) tired d) nervous

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Grandpa meet Samy?
- 4 How is life in Tanta now?



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 How many kids (be) at the party yesterday?
- 2 You should (kept) your password secret.
- 3 Some computer games can be (help).
- 4 The Nile (have) two branches in Egypt.



Punctuate the following:

2

Sham El-Nessim is egypt's oldest festival



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"What makes Egypt special?"

proud of – Egyptian people – wonderful food



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The chameleon is a kind of
 a) fish b) plants c) reptiles d) birds
- 2 They can change
 a) shape b) size c) body d) color
- 3 They have amazing
 a) eyes b) legs c) arms d) teeth
- 4 They eat insects and
 a) trees b) leaves c) birds d) fish



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 I wear a when I ride my bike.
 a) shirt b) cap c) jacket d) helmet
- 2 I need a of water.
 a) piece b) bottle c) bar d) slice



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

train – city – catch – seeds – mouse

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country
 (1) was pleased. He gave his friend grass and (2) The (3)
 mouse said, "Thank you." The city mouse stopped eating and ran to catch the
 eight o'clock (4)





Read the text and answer the questions:

5

I'm Amir. I live in a big city in Egypt with my family. The city life is always noisy and crowded. It has a lot of pretty, bright lights, but smoke and noise are everywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow. I love the country more than the city because it is quiet and clean.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Amir lives in a big in Egypt.
a) town b) village c) farm d) city
- 2 Amir visits Grandpa in
a) spring b) winter c) summer d) fall

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How is life in the city?
- 4 Why does Amir like the country more?



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 You shouldn't (tells) anyone your password.
- 2 I (see) a nice show yesterday.
- 3 You need (in) look left and right.
- 4 Where did Ahmed (went) last year?



Punctuate the following:

2

They live in alexandria



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My first day at school"

..... nervous — put on — teacher





Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 It's important to be on the road.
a) good b) safe c) bad d) early
- 2 You need to right and left.
a) see b) eat c) look d) visit
- 3 You need a on your bike.
a) car b) bus c) boat d) helmet
- 4 You need a light to cross the road.
a) green b) red c) black d) yellow



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 My grandpa is a farmer. He lives in a
a) desert b) village c) city d) river
- 2 We have energy-saving in our apartment.
a) cars b) lightbulbs c) plants d) ovens



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

country – smoke – lights – noisy – like

My best friend is called Hani. He lives in the city. The city is full of bright
(1) But the air is filled with (2) It's very (3) in the city.
I don't like it when I visit the city. I prefer to live in the (4) There are few
sounds and smells in the country.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went on foot because it was near our house. We took some sandwiches and sweets. We played a lot there. We played "Hide and seek." I was the seeker, and they were the players. We ran and laughed a lot. Then we sat under a tree to eat our sandwiches and drink the juice. We returned home in the evening.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They had a picnic in the
a) garden b) farm c) park d) city
- 2 They drank
a) tea b) coffee c) sandwiches d) juice

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did they play?
- 4 Where did they sit?



Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 (Do) you visit your friend last week?
- 2 They had two (packet) of cookies.
- 3 I fell over and broke my arm. It's very (pain).
- 4 I shouldn't (telling) everyone my phone number.

Punctuate the following:

2

people can take your personal information

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A day at the beach."

- When did you go to the beach? - How did you go to the beach?
- What did you do on the beach?



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Grandpa's village was very
 a) polluted b) noisy c) dark d) quiet
- 2 There were no in the past.
 a) children b) people c) cars d) books
- 3 Now, there are a lot of and cars.
 a) tablets b) trucks c) televisions d) pencils
- 4 Grandpa was eight when he buried the of memories.
 a) box b) bag c) packet d) bottle



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We go to school on foot. We always to school.
 a) cycle b) walk c) fly d) drive
- 2 When I travel by, I go through the air.
 a) bus b) plane c) boat d) car



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

kind – bus – wake – friends – ask

I go to school every day. I (1) up early. I go to school by (2)
 I meet my (3) and we play and study. Our teachers are (4) They
 teach us math and English. I go home in the afternoon, and I do my homework
 in the evening.



Read the text and answer the questions:

5

People say that computer games are bad for children. Children spend many hours on their computers or tablets. They look at the screen, and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy. But sometimes computer games are good for children because they need to solve problems in some games. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "....." means father and mother.

- a) Children b) Problems c) Games d) Parents

2 Computer games are sometimes for children.

- a) good b) hot c) angry d) cold

Answer the following questions:

3 Why are computer games bad for children?

4 How can computer games be useful for children?



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 I went to the park yesterday and I (fly) the kite.

2 Naglaa's dress is (beauty).

3 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We (was) very happy.

4 We should (turns) our phones off at night.



Punctuate the following:

2

what games did Ali play yesterday



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A birthday party"

special day – chocolate cake – huge picnic





Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Last, we went to Damietta.
a) weekend b) year c) day d) month
- 2 Grandpa and grandma live the sea.
a) under b) in c) on d) by
- 3 We in the water.
a) read b) swam c) wrote d) slept
- 4 Grandpa caught a
a) dog b) snake c) fish d) shoes



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 People in Egypt are very to visitors.
a) silly b) boring c) hospitable d) scary
- 2 To be safe online, I should have a password.
a) known b) short c) strong d) weak



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

grow – longest – eat – south – drinking

The River Nile is one of the most important rivers in the world. It's the (1) river in the world and it comes from the (2) to the north, it is the main source of (3) water, and it is used to (4) crops.

Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Youssef. Yesterday, I stayed at home and watched an interesting program with my dad. They talked about the reptiles' life. I was amazed when I saw the chameleons because they can change their color as the place where they are. I asked my dad to help me log into safe websites. My dad showed me how to create a password to find any information and advised me to be respectful and not to copy them. I found many pictures and shared them with my friends.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They watched a program about
 a) plants b) oceans c) reptiles d) food
- 2 Youssef shared with his friends.
 a) books b) pictures c) videos d) games

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why was Youssef amazed when he saw the chameleons?
- 4 What did his father advise him to do?



Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We (shouldn't) be proud of our country.
- 2 Some people can (bullying) you.
- 3 My mother goes to work (on) taxi.
- 4 (Do) you go to school yesterday?

Punctuate the following:

i need to wear a jacket

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"How to be safe online"

secret and strong password – accept to be friends – share photos



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 It's important to be online.
a) nervous b) happy c) worried d) safe
- 2 You should keep your secret.
a) name b) computer c) password d) tablet
- 3 You should to be friends only with people you know.
a) accept b) wait c) hide d) call
- 4 You shouldn't your personal information.
a) contact b) share c) protect d) understand



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We should be of our beautiful country.
a) angry b) sad c) proud d) plane
- 2 We called the to help the sick people.
a) school b) bank c) ambulance d) bakery



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

tables – present – wedding – happy – baked

It was my birthday party. The party was at home. Mom (1) cakes for my birthday. She put sweets and juice on the (2) Dad gave me a (3) My friends came to the party. We had fun. We were very (4)



Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Noor. I'm in grade four. My father is a teacher. My mother is a teacher, too. I like playing games with my friends and with my family. I like playing Hide and seek. My brother Hani likes playing football. My friend Sami likes to play Pass the parcel game. We all play football in the club. It's important to be healthy. We should drink enough water and eat healthy food. Fruits and vegetables are very good for our health. We should also sleep well. We should sleep for eight hours.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Noor is in grade
a) three b) four c) five d) six
- 2 Hani likes to play
a) Musical chairs b) Pass the parcel c) football d) basketball

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Noor like to play?
- 4 How can they be healthy?

Writing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (eat) pizza yesterday.
- 2 He goes to school (on) bus.
- 3 You need (of) look left and right when you cross a road.
- 4 You should (has) healthy food.

Punctuate the following:

how many chairs are there

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt"

Kahk – Muslim festival – happy



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Ful Medames is a very dish.
a) heavy b) old c) new d) modern
- 2 It is served with lots of olive and
a) garlic b) onion c) cheese d) sugar
- 3 It is traditional food in
a) England b) Paris c) Egypt d) France
- 4 All people in Egypt like to eat ful for
a) dinner b) snack c) lunch d) breakfast



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The country mouse lives in a in the garden.
a) hole b) mountain c) city d) train
- 2 When we get together, we party games.
a) wrap b) open c) play d) unwrap



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

take – make – roads – foot – rails

There are many types of transportation in my town. I live next to my school, so I go there on (1) When I go to the other side of the town, I (2) the bus. Buses move on (3) When I travel to Cairo, I go by train. Trains move on (4)



Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens on the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon. Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk, but you can buy them from a bakery, too. People say "Eid Mubarak" to their friends. People go to the mosque to pray and spend time with their families.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The 10th Islamic month is called
 a) Ramadan b) May c) Shawwal d) June
- 2 People go to the to pray.
 a) gardens b) parks c) clubs d) mosques



Answer the following questions:

- 3 When is Eid Al-Fitr?
- 4 How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr? ...



Writing



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

- 1 Grandpa (were) eight years old when he buried his box.
- 2 You must (to follow) road signs.
- 3 Computers and tablets are very (use).
- 4 She (doesn't) watch TV yesterday.



Punctuate the following:

2

we are very hospitable people



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The Nile"

..... longest – branches – source of life





Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

- 1 The Nile is the river in the world.
(shortest – longest – smallest)
- 2 The Nile is for different kinds of fish.
(house – flat – home)
- 3 The Nile crocodile is one of the largest
(reptiles – fish – birds)



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

slice – fun – carton – you

Maha: Did you have(1)..... at the party?

Reem : Yes, thank(2).....

Maha: What did you eat?

Reem : I had a(3)..... of cake.

Maha: Anything else?

Reem : I had a(4)..... of juice.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

A country like Egypt is famous for its history, and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Our Egyptian food is wonderful. The most famous Egyptian food is Ful Medames. More than half of Egyptians are under the age of thirty. Egyptian people are helpful to each other. We have authors who won important prizes. We have green lands near the Nile. We should be proud of our country.

Answer the following questions:

- 1 What is Egypt famous for? _____
- 2 What is the most famous Egyptian food? _____

Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Our Egyptian food is
(wonderful – bad – not good)
- 4 More than half of Egyptians are under the age of
(13 – 30 – 3)
- 5 We have lands near the Nile.
(yellow – red – green)



Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

8

- 1 We use the to make calls.
a) radio b) television c) cell phone
- 2 When I travel by, I go through the air.
a) plane b) bus c) ship
- 3 There no cars in the past.
a) was b) are c) were
- 4 I turn my phone off at night.
a) should not b) should c) do not
- 5 My dad gave me a on my birthday.
a) present b) chair c) park
- 6 I football yesterday.
a) play b) played c) playing
- 7 Can I have a of cake, please?
a) glass b) bottle c) piece
- 8 Adel goes to school car.
a) on b) by c) in

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

8

- 1 making – Are – about – a presentation – you – chameleons?

- 2 mouse – delighted – city – The – was.

- 3 a bakery – kahk – can – from – buy – You.

- 4 proud – should – of – be – We – country – our.



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

- 1 The country mouse visited the city mouse in his room — hole — yard
- 2 The country mouse was excited — sad — angry
- 3 The city was pretty and full of balls — lights — colors



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:

8

When — party — Thursday — birthday

Ahmed : Why are you having a(1).....?

Mona : For my(2).....

Ahmed :(3)..... is the party?

Mona : It's on(4).....



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

Many people think that social media is bad for us because we spend too much time on it. They also believe that we are not safe online. On the other hand, some people think that it's great and useful. Social media is a good thing, but we should be careful and stay safe online. Many people think that watching too much TV is not a good idea. It wastes our time because we can spend many hours watching it.

Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why is social media bad for us?
- 2 What is bad about watching TV too much?

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The general idea of the text is about (air pollution — school subjects — social media).
- 4 The underlined word "useful" means (painful — helpful — careful).
- 5 We should be careful and stay (safe — dangerous — weak) online.



Vocabulary and Structures

8



Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 I carry my and go to school.
a) backpack b) game c) gate
- 2 I go to school foot.
a) by b) on c) in
- 3 Ali drank a of water.
a) bottle b) piece c) slice
- 4 My parents me a beautiful present on my last birthday.
a) give b) giving c) gave
- 5 I like staying at home with my
a) family b) school c) teachers
- 6 We should our school clean.
a) keeps b) keeping c) keep
- 7 There are a lot of trees in the
a) forest b) desert c) river
- 8 you go to the club yesterday?
a) Do b) Did c) Does



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

8

- 1 can – You – fun – have.

- 2 the – girl – What – doing – is?

- 3 by – bus – goes – to – He – school.

- 4 should – a seat belt – We – wear.



(A) Reading



Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

8

out – music – play – run

I love to (1) party games like "Musical chairs." To play it, we need chairs and music. If you have seven players, you only need six chairs. Players (2) around the chairs. When the (3) stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is (4)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 You need to look left and

a) write

b) right

c) night

d) light

2 I played with my cousins.

a) food

b) jobs

c) games

d) drink

3 We color boiled in Sham El-Nessim.

a) eggs

b) apples

c) fish

d) oranges

4 "Hide and seek" is an exciting

a) game

b) sport

c) place

d) party



Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Our grandpa lived in a village many years ago. He loved his village very much. His village was very quiet. He liked green plants. Our grandpa visited our city last year. He was excited to visit the city, but he was sad to see a lot of cars and trucks in the city. The city is very noisy. He didn't like the city.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Our grandpa lived in a _____ many years ago.
a) city b) town c) park d) village
- 2 He liked _____ plants.
a) red b) blue c) green d) black
- 3 He was _____ to visit the city.
a) excited b) sad c) bored d) unhappy
- 4 The city is very _____.
a) quiet b) noisy c) happy d) calm



(B) Writing



Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

4

- 1 delicious – Kahk – cookies – very – are.

- a) Kahk very are delicious cookies.
- b) cookies are kahk very delicious.
- c) Kahk are very delicious cookies.

- 2 pros – Social media – cons – and – has.

- a) Pros has social media and cons.
- b) Social media has pros and cons.
- c) Pros and cons has social media.



Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d:

6

- a) I have breakfast at seven o'clock. ()
- b) I go home at two o'clock. ()
- c) I get up at six o'clock. ()
- d) I go to school at eight o'clock. ()

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 7

Practice on Lesson 1

The Nile is home for different kinds of fish and birds. The Nile crocodile is one of the planet's largest reptiles. It is the second largest reptile in the world. It is between 3.5 - 6 m long.

Practice on Lesson 2

I visited my grandpa last week. He lives in a small village. The village was very quiet. He has an old metal box. He opened the old metal box. He has a lot of photos in the box.

Practice on Lesson 3

The city mouse visited the country mouse last week. The country mouse was pleased and excited. The two mice took the train to the city. The life in the city isn't good for the country mouse.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. My father drove me to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom.

Al Azhar Corner

Grandpa's village was very quiet. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. I like the village.

UNIT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday was too hot. I drank two bottles of water. My sister drank a bottle of lemonade. My brother drank a carton of juice. I used a bar of soap to wash my face and hands.

Practice on Lesson 2

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

Practice on Lesson 3

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. Muslims fast in Ramadan. We eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. My mom makes kahk at the bakery.

Test yourself on Unit 8

Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of spring. We can do lots of things during this celebration. We can play in the parks, color eggs, go on picnics, and eat fish. Sham El-Nessim is a festival for Egyptians. Egyptians get together to have fun and celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

Al Azhar Corner

Two years ago, we had a very special party. All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in our aunt's garden. We had fun.

UNIT 9

Practice on Lesson 1

To play "Pass the parcel," you need a present, music, and lots of paper. Wrap a small present with lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Players pass the present to the next person as the music plays.

Practice on Lesson 3

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

Test yourself on Unit 9

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. We love sports. Ferial Abdelaziz is a famous karate player.

Al Azhar Corner

Egypt is a big country. It's famous for its history. The Egyptians are helpful and hospitable, so we should be proud of our country, Egypt.

UNIT 10

Practice on Lesson 1

The chameleon is a kind of reptiles. They're so interesting! They have amazing eyes. They can change their color as the place where they are. They eat insects and leaves.

Practice on Lesson 2

It's important to stay safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should keep your personal information secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know.

Practice on Lesson 3

Amira's children love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. Playing computer games for a long time is unhealthy. They should stop playing after one hour.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers. But, on the other hand, in some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Test yourself on Unit 10

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Al Azhar Corner

When you make a presentation, remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words.

UNIT 11

Practice on Lesson 1

My favorite transportation is the boat. I like watching the Nile by boat. When you travel on a boat, you are on water. The boat is a clean transportation.

Practice on Lesson 2

It's important to be safe on the roads. You need a seat belt in your car. You can cross the road when the light is green. You need to look left and right before you cross the road.

Practice on Lesson 3

Farida goes to school on foot. Farida's house is near the school. Farida crosses the road at the crosswalk. Farida never runs in the street.

Practice on Lesson 4

When we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Air pollution is dangerous for us. Dad goes to work with his friend in the same car. I cycle to school.

Test yourself on Unit 11

There are many means of public transportation in my city. There are cars and buses that move on the roads. Sami likes walking. Emad goes to work by car. Ali goes to work by bus. Eman doesn't like to be on water.

Al Azhar Corner

We need to be careful on the roads. We must cross the road at the crosswalk. We need a green light to cross the road.

UNIT 12

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread.

المتن الثاني: المتاحف المتخفية

المتن الثاني

My father says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. Gas cars were very noisy. Our town had a shopping area, but it was very far. My dad worked in a bookstore on Saturdays.

المتن الثاني

The Nile is the longest river in the world. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest reptiles.

المتن الثاني

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, Muslims fast during the day. People don't eat or drink until sunset. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid.

المتن الثاني

The Nile gives us water to drink and grow food. The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles.

المتن الثاني

To play "Pass the parcel," wrap a present in lots of paper. We need music to play "Pass the parcel." Players give the present to the next person. The player who is holding the present unwraps one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

المتن الثاني

The chameleon is a kind of reptiles. They can change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes. They eat insects and leaves.

المتن الثاني

It's important to be safe on the road. You need to look right and left before you cross the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a green light to cross the road.

المتن الثاني

Grandpa's village was very quiet. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight when he buried the box of memories.

المتن الثاني

Last weekend, we went to Damietta to visit our grandparents. They live by the sea. We swam in the water. Grandpa caught a fish. Grandma made it into a lovely dish.

المتن الثاني

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

المتن الثاني

Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Ful Medames is a very old dish. It is served with lots of olives and garlic. It is traditional food in Egypt. All people in Egypt like to eat ful for breakfast.

المتن الثالث: المتاحف المتخفية

المتن الثاني

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest reptiles.

المتن الثاني

The country mouse visited the city mouse in his hole. The country mouse was excited. The city was pretty and full of lights.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 7 Lesson 1

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles.

UNIT 7 Lesson 3

"Life in the country"

I love life in the country. Life in the country is slow and quiet. There are a lot of trees. There aren't many trucks or cars.

UNIT 7 Lessons 4 & 5

"My first day of school"

I remember my first day of school. I was very nervous. I didn't want to go to school. I carried my backpack. I walked into the classroom. My teacher was very kind.

Test yourself on Unit 7

"My town"

Our town was calm in the past. Now it's noisy. Our town had an old shopping area. Today, we have a big modern shopping mall.

UNIT 8 Lesson 1

Food and drinks

Mom made a special meal for us. I had two bottles of juice. My brother had a packet of cookies. My sister had a piece of bread.

UNIT 8 Lesson 2

"A trip to the sea"

Last week, I went on a trip to the sea with my family. We went to the beach. We swam in the sea. My dad caught a big fish. We had fun.

UNIT 8 Lesson 3

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. People go to the gardens with their families. They eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs.

UNIT 8 Lessons 4 & 5

"My special day"

We had a very special party yesterday. It was my grandma's birthday. All my family came together to celebrate. It was a very special day because our grandma was very happy.

Test yourself on Unit 8

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. People eat kahk to celebrate. They say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends.

UNIT 9 Lesson 1

"Hide and seek"

You need a wide place to play this game. One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

UNIT 9 Lessons 4 & 5

"A birthday party"

My birthday is next week. It's on Sunday, April 12th. The party will be in my house garden. I will invite my friends. We will play some party games and eat cakes.

Test yourself on Unit 9

"My favorite party game"

I love party games. My favorite game is musical chairs. You need some chairs and music to play this game. I play it in the garden with my friends.

UNIT 10 Lesson 1

"Chameleons"

Chameleons are so interesting. They can change color. They have amazing eyes, and they can see all around.

UNIT 10 Lessons 4 & 5

"Computer games"

Some games are good for children because they make children solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.



Test yourself on Unit 10

“Social media”

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas and thoughts. We can have fun, share photos or talk to friends and family on social media.

UNIT 11 Lesson 1

“Transportation”

I love traveling on the road. I go to school by bus. We move slowly and I can see the city. My house is very far from my school.

UNIT 11 Lesson 2

“Road Safety”

To stay safe on the road, you need a helmet on your bike. You need a seat belt in your car. You need a green light to cross the road.

UNIT 11 Lesson 4

“Air Pollution”

Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. We need to stop air pollution.

UNIT 11 Lessons 5 & 6

“Ideas to stop air pollution”

Cars make air pollution. There are some ideas to stop air pollution. We can use buses and trains more. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balconies.

Test yourself on Unit 11

“Transportation in my town”

I go to school by bus. I love traveling on the road. We travel slowly and I can see the city. The bus is my favorite transportation.

CONNECT

Dictation Grade 4

كراسة تسميع الكلمات

الصف 4 الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

20²⁴₂₅



Lesson 1

مدينة

مسي

نهر

صحراء

عابدة

الأطول

الأقصر

الأرض

رواحف

متأكد

يخمن

برج القاهرة

نهر الأمازون

ربما

موطن (نبذة)

تمساح

يفرر

يبدو

يسافر

يفكر

يقول

قرية

واحة

حبل

احتار

نهر النيل

شبق / مثير للاهتمام

حياء

مركز

الأوسع

فرع

يحصن

العالم

كيلو متر

قمر

بوصوح

كوكب

كلاهما

يحاول

يفحص

يختار

يعرف



Lesson 2

متحمس

شاحات

هادئ

فصولي

داخل

زوار

مكان

معدني

إبتسامة

يعبر

يدفن

يحفر

يسحب

يتعجب

صدوق

عشب

طريق

سهل

مواد دراسية

ألعاب

شارع

يبدأ

يجلس

يعيش

يحد

يكرر

ذكريات

يشعر



Lesson 3

الريف

مسرور

حميل

مستهج

سب

فتران

أصوات

الدرس الأخلاقي (العبرة)

لامع

دخان

أصواء

صاحب

صوواء

روائح

خائف

بذور

صوت (بشرى)

ينتظر

يمسك / يلحق

يعطي

يعطي

يعد / يجهز

يأتى

ثمانية

يذهب

قطار

بطء

مطر

أنا

يرى

بشكل لا يصدق

ملكى

يتوقف

فحاة

يحرى

خير

حفرة

لماذا



Lessons

4

&

5

اليوم الأول

ألعاب

رمادى

صور

فصل دراسى

رياضيات

حيران

سيارات تعمل بالوقود

حديث

مرعج

يرتدى

يدرس

يقود

بحمل

تاريخ

مدينة صغيرة

بحث

مبان

يمشى

عصى / متوتر

حقيبة الظهر

بوابة

حتى سكبى

مول تحارى

الكهرباء

سطلون

مطقة تسوق

منحر أحدية

يتذكر

يقبى

يبكى

يتعلم

مشروع

طيب / عطوف

يتحدث

بحلس





Lesson

1

عبوة من السكويات (الكوكير)

قالب من الشيكولاتة

علبة من العصير

زجاجة مياه

شريحة من الكيك

شريحة من البيتزا

حفلة

عطشان

يأكل

ربما

طعام

يشعر

عبوة من الحلوى

قالب من الصابون

علبة من اللبن

زجاجة من عصير الليمون

شريحة من اللحم

قطعة من الحبر

قطعة من الحبر

يتناول / يملك

بشرب

فطيع

فقط

كولا

Lesson

2

قصيدة شعر

أحطبوط

قيدبل البحر

ربادي

وحبة

فيلم

قربئاً

شاطئ

الوقت

منعب

أغنية

ذكرى

ستممر

يتذكر

عميق

رحلة قصيرة

طبق / وحبة

تحلية

صور

محمد

فيديو

بعيش

يستخدم

اختار الساحة

حميل

الإجازة الأسبوعية

سكر

صحي



Lesson 3

مسجد

شهر إسلامي (هجري)

عيد الفصح القبطي

عيد مبارك / عيد سعيد

احتفال

عيد شم السيم

أمريكي

غروب الشمس

مسلم

كعك

شهر شوال

مقالة

معلومات

عسل

رمضان

مكسرات

مختلف

يصوم

لذيذ

يعني / يقصد

محز

بقصى

أقدم

يحتفل

بعد

يحدث

يُدّرس

يضيف

مهرجان / عيد

سمك مملح

برهة

ملون

عيد العطر

سكويت



Lessons

4

&

5

والدة الحدة

يزين

شجرة الكريسماس

عيد ميلاد

عمة / حالة

صخم

خير

كرات ملونة

يمثل

يعنى

يلعب

عيد الكريسماس

ممبر

أولاد العم

عم / حال

سلطة

كانب

دول

حياة جديدة

رموز

بلقي (يرمى)

يأتى





Lesson

1

.....	فريق	.....	يلعب الألعاب
.....	لعبة الغميصة	.....	يعطى الهدايا
.....	لعبة نقل الطرود	.....	يغلف الهدايا
.....	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	.....	يفتح الهدايا
.....	تشغل الموسيقى	.....	أطفال
.....	تقليدى	.....	مشهور / محبوب
.....	جاهز	.....	فائز
.....	واسع	.....	شخص
.....	الباحث	.....	يغلف
.....	ينضم	.....	يمسك
.....	يغطى	.....	يعد
.....	يصبح	.....	يحتفظ بـ
.....	يبحث	.....	يضع
.....	زفاز	.....	ورق
.....	خارجاً	.....	دائرة
.....	الأخير	.....	بدون



Lesson 2

دجرجة الجبن

مهرجان الطائرة الورقية

عيد رأس السنة الصينية

مهرجان الطماطم

مصحك

طرف

سرخف / عبي

وحوش

تين

يدفع

يتمنى

فوصوى

يوان (عملة صينية)

ملون

خبط / جبل

يطير

يحصر

سفرجات / رحلات

غريب

رائع

تل / هصة

تقاليد

وسيلة / طريقة

كمية / مقدار

طين

حي (على قيد الحياة)

يفهم

يجرح / يؤذي

مستدير

وحوه صاحكة

رقم زوجي

حظ سعيد

إسبانيا

الهد

Lesson 3

فول مدمس

حلو (مسكر)

سبوسة

ريت الريتون

كارايه

ثوم

تاريخ

دقيق السميد

عى

متعاون

ثقافة

شراب السكر

مسطقة سياء

زوار

مؤلعون

مصياى

بستمر

شرق

حريص

حبوب

معيد

مؤلم

صحراء

أفكار

حال

طاقة

مملح

حوائز

سن / عمر

فخور

طبيعة

ودود

بطبح

وطي

يعوز

يغطل بالثلح



Lessons

4

&

5

حفلة عيد ميلاد

عنوان

دعوة

مفقود

مكتبة

يتخيل

يدعو

الألعاب الجماعية

يوم رياضي

تيشيرت

عزیزی

طريق

ضيوف

ساحة المدرسة

شورت

يأمل

معلومات

احتفال صفی



Lesson 1

موقع المكتبة الإلكترونية	بحادثة / محادثة
مدهل / مدهش	كلمة المرور
محترم / متسم بالاحترام	يحرى بحثاً
عرض تقديمي	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول
بعبّر	حرباء
بسح	موقع إلكتروني
يخطط	يشئ
بحث	جهاز لوحى (تابلت)
هاتف خلوى (محمول)	يكتب
يراسل / رسالة	يحصل على

Lesson 2

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	أفكار
شخص بالغ	آمن
أجهزة	مبدع
عبى	التمر
شع / قبيح	معلومات شخصية
مخيف	متأخر
يتصل	بسرعة
يشير إلى / يضع علامة	يشارك
يقبل	يتمر
اراء	قوى
سر / سرى	الوالدان

Lesson 3

مطعم	حار
اس	مشكلة
شقة	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
حميل / رائع	غير صحي
يحب	يسأل
يقابل	يحب
يوافق	معًا

Lessons 4 & 5

شاشة	فريق
حائزة	التمر على الإنترنت
بالخارج	سب
نصيحة	يحل
يحاوِر	إيجابيات



Lesson 1

يمسك / يلحق بـ

أتوبيس

مركب (قارب)

طائرة

قطار

سيارة

سفينة

متأخر

بعيد

يسافر

مركبة

وسائل / طرق

مدينة الأقصر

يجري مقابلة

مترو الأنفاق

مطار

سكة حديد

الهواء / الجو

مياه

طريق

عام

مدينة صغيرة

سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)

نقل / مواصلات

يذهب

قدم

أرض

اختبار قصير

Lesson 2

خوذة

صوء

يمين

مستقيم

يركن (السيارة / الدراجة)

يعبر

يركب

إشارات / لافتات الطريق

أمان / سلامة

حزام أمان

يسار

جمل

نأمان

ينعطف

يحتاج

يسبح / يعوم

يطهر / يوضح

أمن

Lesson 3

.....	دراجة بخارية	.....	منتصف
.....	سيارة إسعاف	.....	مصدوم
.....	ممر مشاة	.....	بسرعة شديدة
.....	مستشفى	.....	حذر / حريص
.....	خائف	.....	شاب صغير السن
.....	يتبع	.....	يستدعى / يتصل بـ
.....	يسقط	.....	يقود
.....	يجرح	.....	مدينة كبيرة
.....	زحمة	.....	شاحنة
.....	يصطدم	.....	مطر
.....	يطفو	.....	حلزون
.....	حلم	.....	معطف
.....	شارع	.....	بحر
.....	طريق	.....	ينظف / نظيف

Lesson 4

.....	مواد كيميائية	.....	متسخ
.....	خطر	.....	لندن
.....	أتويسات كهربائية	.....	إنجلترا
.....	قش الارز	.....	حرق
.....	عملية البناء الضوئي	.....	الصين
.....	مرض الربو	.....	قلق
.....	جهاز التدفئة	.....	الطاقة الشمسية
.....	نمو	.....	ممتاز
.....	يتنفس	.....	ظل
.....	يركب الدراجة	.....	يسمح
.....	محاصيل زراعية	.....	يضع
.....	متجددة	.....	موضوع
.....	ابن	.....	باريس
.....	يكح	.....	تلوث

Lessons 5 & 6

.....	مصايح	.....	أنقى
.....	حركة المرور	.....	بلكونة / شرفة
.....	ينزين	.....	مشاكل التنفس
.....	تقرير	.....	شقة
.....	يسمع	.....	هواء نقي
.....	يزيد	.....	هام
.....	يبطء	.....	موفرة للكهرباء



.....	قَمْح	.....	قَرْيَة
.....	مَحْصُول	.....	خَبْز بَلَدِي (عَيْش بَلَدِي)
.....	قَنَاة الرِّي	.....	بَسْكَوَيْت (كُوكِيز)
.....	الرِّي	.....	زَجَاجَات بِلَاسْتِيكِيَّة
.....	دَقِيق القَمْح	.....	قَمَامَة
.....	ذَرَة	.....	أَكْيَاس قَمَامَة
.....	مَهْم	.....	بَشْكَل جَيِّد
.....	شَيْق	.....	بَسِيط
.....	يَنَادِي / يَتَصَل	.....	وَسَائِل التَّوَاصَل الاجْتِمَاعِي
.....	يَحْصَل عَلَي	.....	يَقَابَل
.....	الْمِيدَان الرَّئِيسِي	.....	مَشْكَلَة
.....	يُوصَل / يَحْضُر	.....	شَاي
.....	أَغْرَاض مَنزِلِيَّة	.....	مَلُوتَة
.....	فَخُور	.....	أَرْض
.....	أَجْدَاد	.....	يَنْتِج
.....	عَمِيق	.....	رَائِع
.....	يَبِيع	.....	مَرَّة أُخْرَى / مَجْدَدًا
.....	حَقُول	.....	تَغْيِيرَات
.....	لَذِيذ (شَهِي)	.....	زَرَاعَة